Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

أ- ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about "..........................".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about "..........................".

Or: The text talks about "..........................".

- تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word ".........................." has the same meaning as ".........................."

Or: The underlined word ".........................." is the opposite of the word ".........................."

Or: The underlined word ".........................." refers to "..........................".

Or: The underlined word ".........................." means "..........................".

- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

ب- سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج - Mention اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

1 How to write a paragraph: كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

1. اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.
2. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
7. استخدم جمل بسيطة.
8. حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2 How to write an email: كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

- Write back soon and tell me your news.
- Best wishes. ← جملة ختامية

Yours,

اسم المرسل

Send · Saved



3 How to write a blog:

كيف تكتب مدونة:

1. اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.
2. قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
3. صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
4. صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
5. اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / me).
6. استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
7. اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (In my opinion) / (I think that).

4 How to write a diary entry:

كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات:

1) Write the date.	اكتب التاريخ.
2) Start with "Dear Diary".	ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary).
3) Write about how you felt.	اكتب كيف كان شعورك.
4) Use informal language.	استخدم لغة غير رسمية.
5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me"	استخدم ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me).
6) Describe the (places - events).	صف (الأماكن والأحداث).

5 How to write a text message:

كيف تكتب رسالة نصية:

Drear ...., — عزيزي ....،

I want to ....

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

What do you think? — ماذا تعتقد؟

I hope you like my ideas! — أتمنى أن تعجبك أفكاري!

(Your name) — (اسمك)

....

علامات الترقيم

Capital letters

حروف كبيرة



توضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة والضمير (I) والاختصارات.

1. Mark is from the USA.
2. I visited the Egyptian Museum in April.
3. Today is Friday.
4. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.

Period (Full Stop)





توضع في نهاية الجملة.

1. He is good at swimming.
2. I don't like meat.

Question Mark





توضع في نهاية السؤال.

1. Where is the park?
2. Can I have some juice, please?

Exclamation Mark

علامة التعجب



توضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب .

- Hi!
- Wow!

Apostrophe

الفاصلة العليا

توضع مع (s) الملكية.

توضع في الاختصارات.

1. Mona's dress is pink.
2. I'd like some apples, please.

Comma





1. I am good at football, swimming and tennis. توضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.
2. Yes, I do. - No, I don't. توضع بعد (Yes / No) .
3. I'm great at painting, but I'm bad at singing. توضع قبل (but).
4. Can I have some tea, please? توضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

Lesson (1) VOCABULARY

Fruit الفاكهة

grapes	عنب	bananas	موز
limes	ليمون حامض	lemons	ليمون
coconuts	جوز الهند	mangoes	مانجو

Vegetables الخضروات

potatoes	بطاطس	carrots	جزر
onions	بصل		

Sports الألعاب الرياضية

karate	كاراتيه	squash	لعبة الاسكواش
swimming	السباحة	kung fu	كونغ فو
football	كرة القدم	sailing	الإبحار
handball	كرة اليد	tennis	التنس

Weather الطقس

ice	ثلج	cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم / غائم
stormy	عاصف	flood	فيضان
windy	كثير الرياح	drought	جفاف
rainy	ممطر	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
sunny	مشمس	heat wave	موجة حر

Cities المدن

Cairo	القاهرة	Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Giza	الجيزة	Port Said	بورسعيد

Places in town أماكن في المدينة

bank	بنك	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
square	ميدان	museum	متحف
library	مكتبة	factory	مصنع
station	محطة	restaurant	مطعم

Language Notes

جيد في	good at + noun / v+ing
- I'm good at English.	- I'm good at playing football.
سيء في	bad at + noun / v+ing
- She's bad at science.	- She's bad at drawing.



Study the following:



- My brother is on the football team. They have a match next week.
- I think handball is difficult. You can't kick the ball with your feet.
- My sister is good at swimming. She goes to the pool every Friday.
- I'm good at karate. I have a black belt.
- My friend and I are playing tennis on the grass with our new rackets.
- We love sailing. We take our boat on the river.
- I'm not very good at squash. I can't hit the ball hard enough against the wall.
- I can't always tell the difference between karate and kungfu but I like both sports.

Asking and answering about weather: السؤال والإجابة عن حالة الطقس

What's the weather like in + مكان?

In + مكان , it's + حالة الطقس ....

- In Cairo, it's sunny and hot.
- In Giza, it's windy.
- In Alexandria, it's rainy and cloudy.
- In Port Said, it's rainy and stormy.

Let's remember

Words related to weather كلمات متعلقة بالطقس

- When it gets very windy in the desert, there are some sandstorms.
- A flood happens when there's too much rain and rivers are full.
- A heat wave is when it's very hot for a short time.
- If it doesn't rain for a very long time and plants can't grow, there is a drought.

Listen and write where these people went.

Library - Station - Factory - Shopping mall - Bank - Museum

Amira : I like to buy lots of things here, like clothes, gifts, and shoes. (Shopping mall)

Ziad : I like going here because I love books. (..........)

Shorouk : My father works there. They turn cotton into clothes like T-shirts and dresses. (..........)

Ali : I go here to get a train to visit my cousin in Tanta. (..........)

Sahar : My friend just arrived from London and I'm taking her to see the monuments. (..........)

Sameer : My dad needs to get some money. I'm going with him.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm good at .... footb
   a) play b) played c) playing d) plays
2. She is bad .... Ma
   a) in b) on c) at d) of
3. We are .... at English. We like
   a) good b) bad c) sad d) best
4. Are you bad at .... Englis
   a) speaking b) speaks c) speak d) spoke
5. In Cairo, it's .... and ho
   a) rainy b) sunny c) cold d) cloudy
6. When it gets very windy in the desert, there are sometimes ....
   a) rain b) ice c) sandstorms d) sunny
7. A .... happens when there's too much rai
   a) sandstorm b) flood c) drought d) heat
8. If it doesn't rain for a long time and plants can't grow, there's a ....
   a) drought b) sandstorm c) heat wave d) flood

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. am - at - tennis - I - playing - good - .

   ....

2. Alexandria, - In - cold - it's - and - rainy - .

   ....

3. a drought - grow - Plants - can't - there's - when - .

   ....

4. library - books - The - of - lots - has - .

   ....

5. gets - windy - the desert - The weather - in - very - .

   ....

Green cities

المدن الخضراء

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن المساحات الخضراء في المدن.
- talk about how often we do things. يتحدث عن عدد مرات فعلنا للأشياء.
- listen and read about a project to make a city greener.
  يستمع ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.
- say the sounds th and s. ينطق الأصوات th و s.
- write an informal email about things he/she misses about Egypt.
  يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمي عن الأشياء التي يفتقدها عن مصر.
- research and make an infographic about his/her area.
  يبحث ويقوم بعمل مخطط معلومات بياني عن منطقته.

Lesson (1)

WE WORK IN THE COMMUNITY GARDEN

Key vocabulary

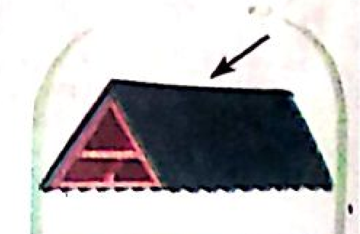




plant
يزرع / نبات



apartment block
عمارة سكنية



roof
سطح



chemicals
مواد كيميائية



natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعي



harvest
يحصد / محصول

Vegetables & Fruit الخضروات والفاكهة

tomatoes	طماطم	peppers	فلفل	dates	بلح / تمر
lemons	ليمون	onions	بصل	lettuce	خس

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

space	مساحة	balcony	شرفة / بلكونة	project	مشروع
neighborhood	حي سكني	organic	عضوي	community	مجتمع
air	الهواء	volunteer	متطوع	garden	حديقة
market	سوق	fresh	طازج	local	محلي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
meet	يقابل	met	met
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It sounds great.	هذا يبدو رائعا.	at the community garden	في حديقة المجتمع
square meter	متر مربع	in the middle of	في منتصف
That's interesting!	هذا مثير للاهتمام!	in the local area	في المنطقة المحلية
make friends	يكوّن صداقات	in the market	في السوق
come from	يأتي من	on Friday afternoon	بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة
that's not all	هذا ليس كل شيء	good for	جيد لـ
all the time	طوال الوقت	on the roof	على السطح

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

لا يوجد مدرسة غدًا! هل تريدين أن تأتي إلى بيتي؟

Mariam : Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

شكرًا يا نور ، لكنني دائمًا أساعد عمتي بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة في حديقة المجتمع.

Nour : The community garden? What's that? حديقة المجتمع؟ ما هذا؟

Mariam : It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

إنها مساحة كبيرة خضراء على سطح عمارة عمتي سلمى. والأشخاص اللذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون من الحي. نحن نزرع الخضروات لنأكلها ، وأحيانًا نبيعها في السوق، أيضًا!

Nour : That's interesting. What things do you grow?

هذا مثير للاهتمام. ما الأشياء التي تزرعونها؟

Mariam : Well, we usually **plant** tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

حسنًا ، عادةً ما نزرع الطماطم والفلفل والبصل والخس- الأشياء التي يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. في بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار الفاكهة. هذا العام لدينا ليمون وتمر.

Nour : And you grow all this food in the middle of the city? Wow!

وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام في وسط المدينة؟ واو!

Mariam : Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's **organic**, too, which means we only use **natural fertilizer** - we never use **chemicals**.

نعم ، هذا يعني أنه يمكن للناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج وهو عضوي أيضًا ، وهذا يعني أننا نستخدم السماد الطبيعي فقط، ولا نستخدم المواد الكيماوية أبدًا.

Nour : Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

هل تنتج حديقتكم الكثير من الخضروات؟

Mariam : Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can **harvest** twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. They are also a great place to meet people and make friends.

نعم، من متر مربع واحد فقط من حديقة السطح، يمكننا حصاد عشرين كيلو جرامًا من الخضروات سنويًا. وهذا ليس كل شيء. تساعد حدائق الأسطح أيضًا في تنقية الهواء في المدينة، والذي يكون مفيدًا لصحة الناس. وهي أيضا مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.

Nour : It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

يبدو ذلك رائعًا، يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية مثل هذه في مدينتنا!

Did you know ?

"Urban greening" is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

يُعد "تخضير المناطق الحضرية" جزءًا مهمًا من تخطيط المدن في العديد من البلدان. وهذا يعني إنشاء مناطق من النباتات والأشجار في المدن. يمكن أن تكون هذه المناطق حدائق عامة صغيرة بين المباني أو حدائق خاصة على أسطح الناس.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The community garden produces a lot of ....
   a) corn b) flowers c) vegetables d) books
2. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can .... twenty kilos of vegetables a year.
   a) make b) harvest c) plant d) clean
3. Roof gardens also help clean the .... in the city.
   a) air b) water c) sea d) lake
4. Roof gardens are a great place to meet people and make ....
   a) money b) books c) friends d) water

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I always help my aunt at the .... garden.
   a) common b) space c) community d) block
2. We .... vegetables in the market.
   a) sell b) harvest c) meet d) drink
3. ".. " means we only use natural fertilizers.
   a) Organization b) Organism c) Organ d) Organic
4. We never use .... when we grow organic food.
   a) plants b) seeds c) chemicals d) water
5. Does your garden .... a lot of vegetables?
   a) buy b) clean c) sell d) produce
6. We can .... twenty kilos of vegetables a year from the roof garden.
   a) clean b) harvest c) play d) need
7. .... are a kind of vegetables.
   a) Pears b) Bananas c) Peppers d) Oranges
8. My aunt lives in an apartment ....
   a) cave b) block c) hospital d) mall
9. .... are people who work without getting money.
   a) Volunteers b) Vets c) Farmers d) Doctors

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

friends - roof - aunt - sell - grow

Aya asks Heba to go to her house tomorrow, but Heba goes to help her 1) .... on Fridays. They work on community garden on the 2) .... of an apartment block. They 3) .... vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they 4) .... them, too.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - my - want - Do - house - to come - you - ?

....

2. use - We - chemicals - never - .

....

3. the air - Roof - help - clean - gardens - .

....

4. gardens - need - We - community - more - .

....

5. a lot of - the city - in - We - food - grow - .

....

5 Punctuate the following.

- does your garden produce a lot of vegetables

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Our community garden

Guiding elements:

(roof - volunteers - vegetables - fertilizer - harvest)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson (2) WE ALWAYS WORK HARD

Vocabulary الكلمات

organization	منظمة	mini forest	غابة مصغرة	link	رابط
logo	شعار	nature	الطبيعة	effects	تأثيرات
wildlife	الحياة البرية	foreign	غريب / أجنبي	climate	مناخ
naturally	بصورة طبيعية	movement	حركة	area	منطقة
locations	مواقع	Earth aid	مساعدة الأرض	palm tree	نخلة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
join	ينضم / يلتحق ب	joined	joined
offer	يعرض	offered	offered
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
find	يجد	found	found
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the middle of	في منتصف	go cycling	يمارس ركوب الدراجة
look after	يعتني ب	safe habitat	موطن آمن
find out	يكتشف	angry with	غاضب من
the movie theater	السينما	on holiday	في إجازة
Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	on weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
urban locations	مواقع حضرية	over time	بمرور الوقت

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.



What is Mini Forest?

ما هي الغابة الصغيرة؟

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our **wildlife** - like plants, animals, and other living things.

الغابة الصغيرة هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدننا. تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة ومساعدة الحياة البرية لدينا - مثل النباتات والحيوانات والكائنات الحية الأخرى.

At Mini Forest, we **always** work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

في الغابة الصغيرة، نعمل دائمًا بجد للعثور على أفضل المواقع الحضرية لغاباتنا، حيث يحتاج الناس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرها.

We **never** grow foreign plants in our projects, we **always** plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

نحن لا نزرع أبدًا نباتات غريبة في مشاريعنا، فنحن دائمًا نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقة ما ونعتني بها بدقة حتى تصبح غابة صغيرة.

We also **usually** work with local communities to plant and look after the forests over time.

كما نعمل عادةً مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والعناية بها بمرور الوقت.



We collect data from every forest we plant **a few times a month**. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

نقوم بجمع البيانات من كل غابة نزرعها مرات قليلة في الشهر. هذا يساعدنا على فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الناس والحياة البرية و مناخ المنطقة.

We **rarely** have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are **always** happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out more.

نادرًا ما يكون لدينا ما يكفي من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا، لذلك نحن دائمًا سعداء عندما يعرض الناس علينا المساعدة. انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Nadine	:	What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?
Gameela	:	I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?
Nadine	:	I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.
Gameela	:	Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?
Nadine	:	They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a town called Asyut. Do you know it? It's on the River Nile.
Gameela	:	Asyut? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?
Nadine	:	About once a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holding at Eid al-Adha too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.
Gameela	:	I love Eid al-Adha! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks and we always eat a lot!
Nadine	:	That sounds great!
Gameela	:	What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?
Nadine	:	Not really. Do you want to do something together?
Gameela	:	Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square.
Nadine	:	Yes, okay. It looks nice and they've got delicious dates and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?
Gameela	:	Yes, that sounds great. I'll text you.

Help your child listen and read.

Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense
زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines and facts.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والحقائق.

- She always visits her aunt. (Habit)
- I get up early every day. (Routine)
- The sun rises in the east. (Fact)

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- I visit my cousins every week.

He / She / It / Singular noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل) **+ (s /es / ies)**

- He usually goes to school by bus.

Spelling rules:

1. We add (es) when the verb ends in (o / sh / ch / x / ss / z).

نضيف (es) إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (o / sh / ch / x / ss / z).

go →	goes	wash →	washes
watch →	watches	buzz →	buzzes
fix →	fixes	cross →	crosses

2. When the verb ends in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (ies).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies).

study → studies cry → cries fly → flies

3. When the verb ends in (a vowel + y), we only add (s).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبله حرف متحرك نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays say → says pay → pays

Help your child use the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط.

Lesson (2)

Negation النفي

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + don't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- We don't like fish.
- Girls don't play in the street.

He / She / It / Singular noun + doesn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- She doesn't like history.
- Omar doesn't eat snacks.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Do + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

- Do you like English?
  - Yes, I do.
  - No, I don't.
- Do your parents get up early?
  - Yes, they do.
  - No, they don't.

Does + (he / she / it / singular noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

- Does Ali get up early?
  - Yes, he does.
  - No, he doesn't.
- Does she work hard?
  - Yes, she does.
  - No, she doesn't.

Wh-question

QW + (do / does) + subject فاعل + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

- Where do you live?
- I live in Cairo.
- When does he get up?
- He gets up at 6 o'clock.

Help your child use the present simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

never	0%	أبدًا	often	70%	غالبًا
rarely	10%	نادرًا	usually	80%	عادة
sometimes	50%	أحيانًا	always	100%	دائمًا

never rarely sometimes often usually always

0% ⟵⟶ 100%

- I never eat fish. I don't like it.
- He usually goes to school by bus.
- Mona always gets up early.

👉 We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي ولكن بعد الفعل (be) للتحدث عن كم مرة يحدث الفعل.

- We always work hard.
- We are always happy when people offer to help us.

👉 We use How often ....? to ask about the frequency of an action.

نستخدم "How often" بمعنى (كم مرة) للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

How often + do / does + I - we - you - they - اسم جمع / he - she - it - اسم مفرد + inf. ....?

👉 We use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something.

يمكننا استخدام هذه التعبيرات الزمنية للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

once	مرة	twice	مرتان
three times	ثلاث مرات	four times	أربع مرات
every (day / week ...)	كل (يوم، أسبوع ...)	five times	خمس مرات

- How often do you work in the community garden?
- I work there twice a week.

Help your child use adverbs of frequency.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ظروف التكرار.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The weather is .... sunny in Egypt in summer.
   a) usually b) never c) yet d) ever
2. I .... eat dates as a snack. I love them!
   a) rarely b) don't c) doesn't d) often
3. How .... do you play football with your friends?
   a) often b) ever c) high d) tall
4. Samer .... plays video games. He doesn't like them.
   a) always b) never c) don't d) doesn't
5. We .... go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.
   a) doesn't b) always c) never d) sometimes
6. You .... call me so late at night. Is something wrong?
   a) sometimes b) rarely c) always d) often
7. We don't like fish at all. We .... eat it.
   a) often b) never c) sometimes d) always
8. Dr Mohsen is .... late for work. He likes to be at the hospital on time.
   a) never b) usually c) sometimes d) always

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He .... (play) tennis in the club every week.
2. Where .... (are) they live? - They live in Cairo.
3. She never .... (get) up late.
4. Ali .... (not go) to the club every day.
5. It .... (always is) hot in the desert.
6. My father .... (goes usually) to work by car.
7. She never .... (play) in the living room.
8. How .... (old) do you go to the club? - Once a week.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mini Forest is a/an ....
   a) book b) organization c) school d) place
2. Mini Forest plants .... areas of trees in the middle of our cities.
   a) large b) huge c) small d) big
3. These special green areas help people enjoy ....
   a) nature b) life c) work d) time
4. We always work hard to find the best .... locations for our forests.
   a) agricultural b) busy c) urban d) rural

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We always plant trees that grow ....
   a) nature b) naturally c) strangely d) freely
2. We work with local communities to look .... the forest over time.
   a) for b) up c) at d) after
3. We need more .... to join the Mini Forest organization.
   a) sellers b) players c) volunteers d) buyers
4. Date palm trees .... produce fruit.
   a) usually b) never c) doesn't d) aren't
5. My aunt lives with us, so I .... speak to her.
   a) often b) never c) ever d) doesn't
6. Hany .... plays football. He doesn't like sports.
   a) often b) rarely c) always d) sometimes
7. How often do you go to the park? - .... a week.
   a) One b) Once c) Two d) Three

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

urban - link - small - wildlife - nature

Mini Forest is an organization which plants 1) .... areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy 2) .... and help our 3) .... At Mini Forest, people always work hard to find the best 4) .... locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals, and other living things. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most. We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined world "small" is ....
   a) big   b) little   c) tiny   d) a few
2. Mini forest helps our .... like plants, animals, and other living things.
   a) children   b) kids   c) wildlife   d) students
3. At Mini Forest, we never grow .... plants.
   a) natural   b) local   c) small   d) foreign

Answer the following questions.

4. What is Mini forest?

....

5. Why is Mini forest important?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. 10 pm - usually - I'm - in bed - before - .

....

2. wildlife - most - People - nature - need - and - .

....

3. always - My dad - a healthy breakfast - in the morning - eats - .

....

4. never - late - are - Donia and Wael - for school - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brac

1. The weather is .... (never) sunny in Egypt in su
2. My father always .... (eat) a healthy brea
3. Donia and Wael .... (never are) late for s
4. How often do you .... (goes) to the d
5. We .... (doesn't) go cycling on h
6. How .... (much) do you go to the d
7. We .... (always are) happy when people offer to he

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Mini Forest

Guiding elements:

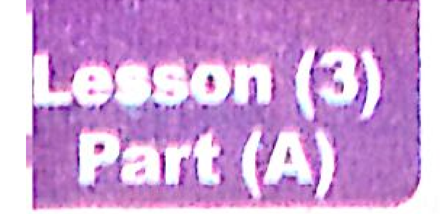
(plants - trees - middle - green areas - wildlife - living things)

....

....

....

....



Lesson (3)
Part (A)

READING

Definitions تعريفات

through	goes from one place to another	يمر من (خلال / عبر)
_ out	spend time with, relax together	يقضي وقتاً مع - يسترخون معاً
	feel sad that you can't have or see something	يفتقد
..al residents	people who live in a neighborhood	السكان المحليون
line	a road for trains	خط سكة حديد

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

lew York	مدينة نيويورك	trains	قطارات
reen spaces	مساحات خضراء	noisy	مزعج / صاخب
ıeater performance	عرض مسرحي	restaurant	مطعم
rt work	عمل فني	project	مشروع
pecies	أنواع / فصائل	High Line	خط سريع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
reate	يبتكر / ينشئ	created	created
ıove	ينتقل / يتحرك	moved	moved
pend	يقضي (وقتاً)	spent	spent

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the sixteenth floor	في الطابق السادس عشر	It's really cool!	إنه رائع حقاً!
Ve have a great view	لدينا منظر رائع / إطلالة رائعة	do running	يمارس الجرى
'he famous High Line	خط السكة الحديد الشهير (هاى لاين)	tastes delicious	مذاقه لذيذ
uns for 2.5 kms	تمتد لمسافة 2.5 كيلو متر	at night	ليلاً

elp your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Wael is in New York for a year with his family. Read his email. What's Wael's favorite place in New York?

To: samer@email.com
From: waeltawfik@email.com
Subject: Life in New York

Search

Hi Samer,



How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city. New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts o the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line - do you know about it?

رحبا سامر،
يف حالك؟ أنا بخير ونيويورك رائعة! تقع شقتنا في الطابق السادس عشر ، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة للمدينة. نيويورك بها الكثير من
ساحات الخضراء. هناك أيضا مشاريع لإنشاء حدائق ومساحات خضراء جديدة في أجزاء من المدينة لا يستخدمها أحد الآن، مثل خط
سكة الحديد هاي لاين الشهير- هل تعرف شيئا عنه؟

Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stoppe using it. Some local residents then decided to make the old railway into big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with mo than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when yo walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, e delicious food, go running, or just hang out with your friends. I think it's m favorite place in New York. It passes through our neighborhood, so I ofte go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.

سنوات، كان الهاي لاين خط سكة حديد ، ولكن في الثمانينات توقفت القطارات عن استخدامه. ثم قرر بعض السكان المحليين
يل السكة الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة كبيرة وطويلة يمكن للجميع استخدامها. الآن هي مساحة خضراء بها أكثر من ٥٠٠ نوع من
ات والأشجار! يبلغ طوله ٢,٥ كم وعندما تمشي فيه، يمكنك مشاهدة الأعمال الفنية أو مشاهدة عرض مسرحي أو تناول طعام لذيذ
جري أو مجرد قضاء وقت مع أصدقائك. أعتقد أنه مكاني المفضل في نيويورك. يمر عبر حينا ، لذلك غالبا ما أذهب إلى هناك مع
يه. هذه واحدة من صوري له.

Help your child read the email.

How are things in Alexandria? I miss home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

كيف هي الأمور في الإسكندرية؟ أفتقد الوطن. نيويورك صاخبة جدًا طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية أكثر هدوءًا في الليل.

There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

Write soon and tell me all your news.

Wael

هناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا في نيويورك، والطعام مذاقه مختلف عن الطعام في الوطن. أعتقد أن مذاق الطعام أكثر لذة في مصر. أفتقد طعامنا كثيرًا! اكتب قريبًا وقل لي كل أخبارك.

وائل

How to answer true or false exercises.

كيفية حل أسئلة الصواب والخطأ

1. First read the sentences. اقرأ الجمل بعناية أولًا.
2. Underline the key words and look for similar words in the text. ضع خط تحت الكلمات الرئيسية وابحث عن الكلمات المتشابهة في النص.
3. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text. قارن المعلومات الواردة في الجمل والنص.
4. Choose your answer. اختر إجابتك.

Read the text again and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Samer's family lives in a tall building.
2. There aren't many parks in New York.
3. Samer lives far from the High Line.
4. In the past, the High Line was a road.
5. The High Line is two and a half kilometers long.
6. Samer loves the local food.

Help your child read the email.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكتروني

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our apartment block is on the sixteenth ....
   a) flour b) floor c) flower d) ground
2. The High Line passes .... our neighborhood
   a) on b) of c) throw d) through
3. The High Line was a .... line
   a) bus b) bike c) way d) railway
4. Some .... residents made the old railway into a big, long park
   a) local b) national c) legal d) usual
5. There are 500 .... of plants in the park
   a) spaces b) species c) spices d) pieces
6. " .... " is to feel sad that you can't have or see something
   a) Pass b) Miss c) Hang out d) Enjoy
7. I always hang .... with my friends in New York
   a) off b) out c) on d) at
8. I .... home very much
   a) mess b) miss c) lose d) leave

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blocks - High Line - floor - green - view

Wael is well and thinks that New York is great. His apartment is on the sixteenth 1) ...., so he has a great 2) .... of the city. New York has a lot of 3) .... spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous 4) ....



STORY: THE SELFISH GIANT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

hole	فتحة / ثقب	spring	الربيع	tiny	صغيرة جدًا
selfish	أناني	giant	عملاق	local children	أطفال القرية

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

wall	حائط / سور	empty	فارغ	village	قرية
sound	صوت	silent	ساكن / صامت	soft	طري / ناعم
snow	جليد	grass	عشب	branch	غصن
winter	الشتاء	lovely	جميل	bees	نحل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
share	يشارك	shared	shared
pass	يمر / يجتاز	passed	passed
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

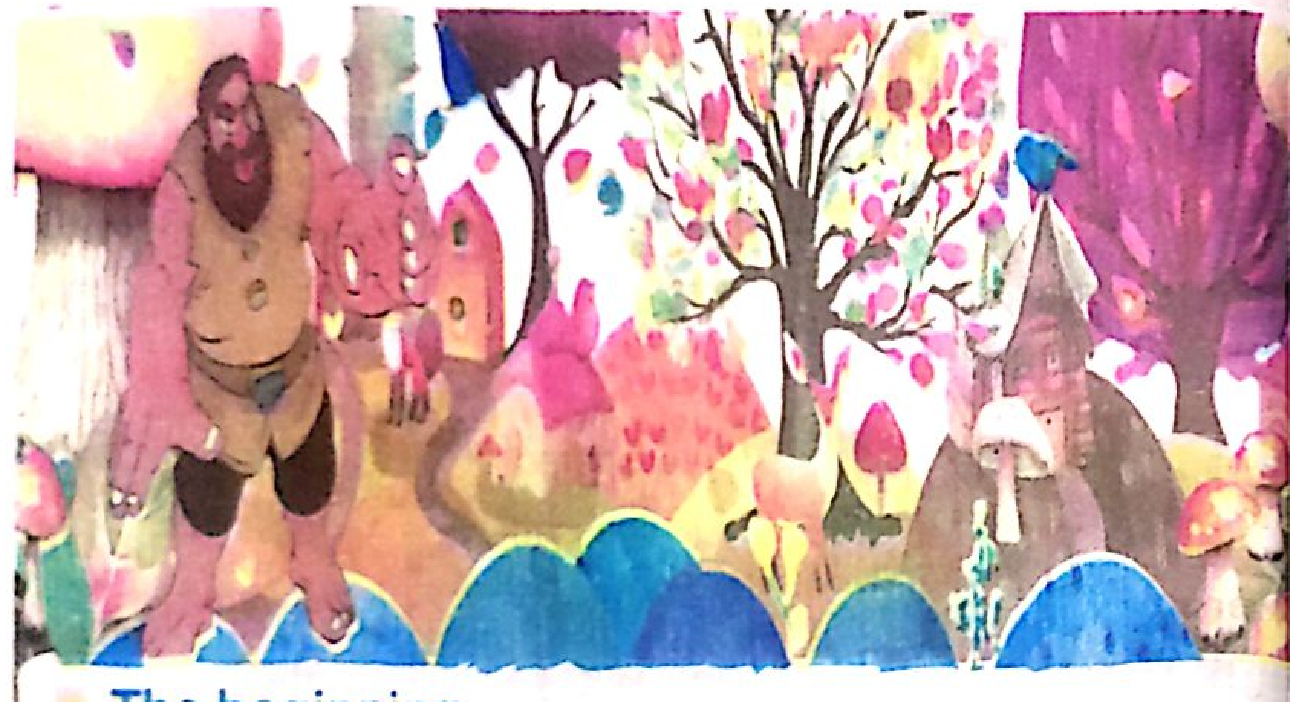
Present		Past	P.P
fly	يطير	flew	flown
wake	يستيقظ	woke	woken
sing	يغني	sang	sung
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
stand	يقف	stood	stood
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions ـيرات وحروف جر هامة

on their way home	في طريقهم إلى المنزل	fly away	ـو بعيدًا
make the children happy	يُسعد الأطفال	climb up into	ـلى أعلى
the green grass turns brown	يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البني	wake up	ـيقظ
in one corner of the garden	في أحد أركان الحديقة	in the tree	ـشجرة
look out of the window	ينظر من النافذة	too + adj + to + inf.	ـلدرجة ألا

Listen and read. ـمع واقرأ.



The beginning

In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his gard there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afterno on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

ـى القرى يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة رائعة. يوجد في حديقته أشجار طويلة وزهور جميلة وعشب أخضر طرى. هناك طيور ملونة ـي الأشجار ونحل على النباتات.

ـهر كل يوم وفي طريقهم إلى المنزل من المدرسة ، يأتي الأطفال المحليون ليلعبوا في حديقة العملاق. تجعل الحديقة الجميلة الأطفال ـة دائمًا.

Help your child read the story.

ـطفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

The middle

But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

لكن العملاق الأناني لا يريد أن يشاركه أحد حديقته ، لذلك في يوم من الأيام بني جدارًا كبيرًا حولها. الآن لا يأتي الأطفال إلى هناك ليلعبوا. تمر الأيام والحديقة دائمًا فارغة وساكنة. ورويدًا رويدًا، يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البني. تسقط الأوراق من الأشجار ثم يغطي الجليد الحديقة و تطير جميع الطيور والنحل بعيدًا.

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand, usually his garden is beautiful in spring! What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

يحل فصل الربيع في القرية، لكن في حديقة العملاق لا يزال الشتاء موجودًا. كل شيء تحت الجليد. العملاق لا يفهم، عادةً ما تكون حديقته جميلة في الربيع! ما الخطأ؟ ثم في صباح أحد الأيام يستيقظ ويسمع صوتًا جميلًا. يغني طائر أزرق صغير في شجرة بالخارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتًا جميلًا آخر - الأطفال يضحكون.

The end

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

ينظر من النافذة ويرى أن الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب في جدار الحديقة. الآن يجلسون على الأشجار. عادت الأوراق على الأشجار خضراء مرة أخرى والزهور تتفتح حولها. يشعر العملاق بسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرى.

But in one corner of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why spring didn't come," he says. "I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says, "good things happen."

لكن في أحد أركان الحديقة لا يزال الشتاء موجودًا. يرى العملاق صبيًا صغيرًا يقف هناك. إنه أصغر من أن يصعد إلى الشجرة. فجأة يفهم العملاق كل شيء. يقول: " الآن أعرف لماذا لم يأت الربيع ، لأنني كنت أنانيًا بشأن حديقتي." يخرج ويساعد الصبي الصغير على الصعود على الشجرة. فجأة، تتفتح كل الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ في الغناء. يقول العملاق: "عندما لا تكون أنانيًا، تحدث الأشياء الجيدة."

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... arrives in the village.
   a) Fall b) Winter c) Spring d) Summer
2. Everything in the giant's garden is under the ....
   a) snow b) sun c) moon d) rain
3. The giant garden is usually .... in spring.
   a) bad b) wasteland c) ugly d) beautiful
4. One morning the giant hears a lovely blue .... singing.
   a) boy b) girl c) bird d) child

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is very big
   a) giant b) little c) small d) tiny
2. .... their way home, the children play in the giant's garden
   a) In b) Of c) On d) At
3. The .... giant doesn't want to share his garden
   a) selfish b) kind c) soft d) nice
4. The giant builds a big .... around his garden
   a) bridge b) wall c) block d) apartment

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

local - singing - happy - garden - beautiful

In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden, In his garden there are tall trees, 1) .... flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds 2) .... in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the 3) .... children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



The (th) /θ/ and (s) /s/ sounds





think
يفكر - يعتقد



thumb
إصبع الإبهام



grass
أعشاب - حشائش



spring
الربيع

th /θ/				s /s/			
thick	سميك	through	خلال	sick	مريض	soft	ناعم
bath	حمام / بانيو	mouth	فم	pass	يمر / يعبر	selfish	أناني
throw	يلقي / يرمي	thin	رفيع	mouse	فأر	bus	أتوبيس
thirsty	عطشان	thanks	شكرًا	sing	يغني	seed	بذرة
threaten	يهدد	thing	شيء	six	ستة	sunset	غروب الشمس
path	ممر	thunder	رعد	so	لذلك	stalk	ساق نبات

Listen, read and repeat.

استمع، اقرأ ثم ردد.

1- I think I have six thick thumbs.

2- The thin mouse thinks it's sick.

3- The sunset sky is sunny, but thunder threatens.

- Listen and complete the words with /s/ or /th/.

1. _eed
2. _ _irsty
3. _talk
4. _ _anks
5. ba_ _
6. bu_
7. _oft
8. _elfish
9. _ _rough

Help your child say s and th sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن ينطق صوت الحرفين s / th .

Lessons (4 & 5)

WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary الكلمات

The Meadows	المروج (مساحات خضراء)	caption	تعليق
infographic	مخطط توضيحي	especially	خاصة
map	خريطة	porridge	عصيدة / حساء الشعير
warm	دافئ	honey	عسل
Scotland	اسكتلندا	ful medames	فول مدمس
informal	غير رسمي	tradition	تقليد
famous	مشهور	view	منظر
square	ميدان	Scottish people	الشعب الأسكتلندي
Edinburgh Castle	قلعة إدنبرة	tone	نغمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
write	يكتب	wrote	written
make	يصنع	made	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

next to	بجوار	a cool park	حديقة جميلة
for breakfast	على الإفطار	in the distance	من بعيد
on the third floor	في الطابق الثالث	It's really interesting!	إنها حقًا مثيرة للاهتمام!
to the edge of	إلى حافة	lots of love	الكثير من الحب
on the other side	على الجانب الآخر	put .. on	يضع ... على

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read Donia's email to her friend Laila in Luxor.

From:	Donia@qwikmail.com
To:	Laila@egyptmail.com
Subject:	My new life in Scotland

Hi Laila,

How are things with you?

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani.

It's really interesting! Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there.

مرحبًا ليلى،

كيف هي الأمور معك؟

أنا أخيرًا في اسكتلندا مع أمي، وأبي، وهاني. إنها مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا. تقع شقتنا في وسط المدينة ، بجوار حديقة رائعة تسمى "ذا ميدوز". إنها في الطابق الثالث والحديقة على الجانب الآخر من الشارع. لذلك لدينا إطلاله رائعة على الأشجار. يستخدم الناس الحديقة كثيرًا لممارسة الرياضة ولقاء الأصدقاء، لذلك يوجد دائمًا شيء يمكن رؤيته هناك.

In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too! I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt - the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!

من بعيد يمكننا رؤية قلعة إدنبرة الشهيرة أيضًا! أنا أحب أسكتلندا ، ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي أفتقدها في مصر - الطقس الدافئ المشمس (الجو هنا ليس حارًا أبدًا) وخاصة الطعام! الطعام الأسكتلندي جيد ولكن الطعام المصري أفضل! على سبيل المثال ، يتناول الكثير من الأسكتلنديين العصيدة. عادة ما يعدونها بالحليب ، وأحيانًا يضعون العسل عليها، لكن أنا لا أحبه. أفتقد حقًا وجبة الإفطار المصرية المفضلة لدي وهو الفول المدمس.

The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV- in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Donia

الناس هنا لطفاء ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد في المدرسة. غالبًا ما أذهب إلى منزل صديقتي رونا بعد المدرسة ونذاكر معًا وأحيانًا نشاهد التلفزيون - باللغة الإنجليزية!

من فضلك اكتبي لي عاجلًا وأخبريني بكل الأخبار من الوطن.

أحبك كثيرًا،

دنيا

Help your child read an email.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ بريدًا إلكترونيًا.



Writing an informal email:

- An informal e-mail is a message you write to friends or family.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتبها للأصدقاء أو لأفراد الأسرة.

- An informal e-mail should be friendly in tone.

ينبغي أن يتسم البريد الإلكتروني بالود في أسلوبه.

- Use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

استخدم لغة غير رسمية متضمنًا عبارات افتتاحية وختامية

Phrase		Its function	
Hi Laila	مرحبًا ليلي	Opening phrase	عبارة افتتاحية
How are things with you?	كيف هي الأمور معك؟	A question to reader	سؤال للقارئ
Please write back soon.	من فضلك، اكتب لي قريبًا.	A request to reader	طلب للقارئ
A really cool park.	حديقة جميلة حقًا.	Informal expressions	تعبيرات غير رسمية
Lots of love.	أحبك كثيرًا	Closing phrase	عبارة ختامية

A model of an informal email

Write an informal email to your friend in Egypt telling him about your new life.

From: Ali@yahoo.com

To: Amr@yahoo.com

Subject: My new life in Saudi Arabia

Hi Amr,

How are things with you?

I'm finally in Saudi Arabia with my family. It's amazing!

Our house is in the city center in Jeddah. There are some green spaces in the city. People enjoy spending their time here. They always go for a walk or meet up together. I like Saudi Arabia but I miss a lot of things about Egypt. I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames.

Please write back soon.

Lots of love,

Ali

Help your child write an informal email.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمي.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Donia is in .... with her family.
   a) Egypt b) London c) Scotland d) America
2. Their .... is in the city center.
   a) shop b) apartment c) school d) park
3. Their apartment is on the .... floor.
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
4. People use the .... a lot for sports and meeting people.
   a) street b) park c) bank d) balcony

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our apartment is .... to a really cool park.
   a) in front b) next c) behind d) on
2. My apartment is on the third ....
   a) flower b) fly c) flour d) floor
3. People use the park for sports and .... friends.
   a) building b) meeting c) sailing d) helping
4. .... the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle.
   a) On b) In c) At d) By

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

porridge - Egypt - Ful Medames - better - Scottish

I live in Scotland with my family. There are lots of things I miss about 1) .... - the warm, sunny weather and especially the food! 2) .... food is OK but Egyptian food is 3) .... For breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat 4) .... They usually make it with milk and they sometimes put honey on it.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sports - for - People - a lot - the park - use - .

 ....

2. ful medames - For - have - I - breakfast, - .

 ....

3. are - nice - very - The - here - people - .

 ....

4. school - at - I - friends - have - a lot of - .

 ....

5. view - the trees - We - over - a great - have - .

 ....

5 Write an email.

Write an email to your friend Ali, telling him about your holiday in Alexandria. Your name is Ahmed. Your email address is ahmed@yahoo.com. Ali's email address is ali@yahoo.com.

From: ....

To: ....

Subject: ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

A community garden

We work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment block. We grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes we sell them, too. We think that the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the city, and the garden project is a good place to make new friends.

Mini Forest

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals, and other living things. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

Write an email.

From: Hamza@yahoo.com
To: Amr@yahoo.com
Subject: My new life in France

Hi Adam,
How are things with you?
I'm finally in France with my family. It's amazing!
Our house is in the city center in Paris. There are some green spaces in the city. People enjoy spending their time here. They always go for a walk or meet up together. I like France but I miss a lot of things about Egypt. I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames.
Please write back soon.
Lots of love,
Hamza

Review on Unit (1)

Vocabulary

apartment block	عمارة سكنية	roof	سطح	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	organic	عضوي	volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حي سكني	mini forest	غابة صغيرة	Earth aid	مساعدة الأرض
organization	منظمة	wild life	الحياة البرية	foreign	أجنبي
urban	حضري	High Line	خط سريع	railway	خط سكة حديد
local residents	السكان المحليون	hang out	يقضي وقتا مع	pass through	يمر عبر

Others

selfish	أناني	giant	عملاق	lovely	جميل
empty	فارغ	tiny	صغير جدا	share	يشارك
silent	صامت	snow	جليد	Scotland	اسكتلندا
porridge	حساء الشعير	tradition	تقليد	the Meadows	المروج

Phonics

th /θ/				s /s/			
thick	سميك	through	خلال	sick	مريض	soft	ناعم
bath	حمام / بانيو	mouth	فم	pass	يمر / يعبر	selfish	أناني
throw	يلقي / يرمي	thin	رفيع	mouse	فأر	bus	أتوبيس
thirsty	عطشان	thanks	شكرا	sing	يغني	seed	بذرة
threaten	يهدد	thing	شيء	six	ستة	sunset	غروب الشمس
path	ممر	thunder	رعد	so	لذلك		

Language

Present Simple Tense

- I play tennis.
- She goes to the club.

Adverbs of frequency

never - rarely - sometimes - often - usually - always - every (day) - once a day - twice a week - 3 times a year

- I always eat dates.
- The girl is never noisy.

Help your child revise unit (1).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

حديقة المجتمع	....	نبات / يزرع	....
عمارة سكنية	....	مواد كيماوية	....
سطح	....	سماد طبيعي	....
نبات	....	متطوع	....
ينتج	....	طعام طازج	....

Lesson (2)

أبدًا	....	دائمًا	....
رابط	....	مرة	....
عادة	....	متطوع	....
الحياة البرية	....	غابة صغيرة	....
الطبيعة	....	مساحات خضراء	....
يكتشف	....	يجمع	....
يعتني بـ	....	يعرض	....

Lesson (3)

يمر من خلال	....	خط سكة حديدية	....
ينتقل	....	يفتقد	....
السكان المحليون	....	أناني	....
شقة سكنية	....	منظر	....
ليلًا	....	يقضي وقتًا مع	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

بريد إلكتروني	....	كيف هي الأمور معك؟	....
عصيدة / ثريد	....	شارع	....
صوت	....	يقابل الأصدقاء	....
شيق	....	على الإفطار	....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In one corner of the garden, it is still ....
   a) summer b) winter c) fall d) spring
2. The giant sees a little .... standing there.
   a) boy b) girl c) man d) woman
3. The giant was .... about his garden.
   a) kind b) happy c) selfish d) sad
4. He goes out and help the little boy climb up into the ....
   a) wall b) school c) house d) tree

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I prefer to eat fruit that's natural and organic with no ....
   a) flowers b) chemicals c) leaves d) seeds
2. I live in an apartment ....
   a) block b) black c) floor d) room
3. There isn't any one in the garden. It's ....
   a) far b) full c) empty d) big
4. We can use old coffee as a natural .... for plants in your garden.
   a) chemical b) fertilizer c) stalk d) seed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

market - volunteers - green - vegetables - block

My friends work in a community garden. It's a big 1) .... space on the roof of an apartment 2) .... They grow 3) .... and fruits for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them in the 4) .....,too!

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My friend Kareem lives in a very nice house with a small garden. In the garden, his father planted different kinds of fruit and vegetables. One day he invited me and seven of our friends to his birthday party. I arrived at my friend's house at eight in the evening. There, I found all my friends sitting with Kareem in the garden. One of our friends brought a nice book about games, so we played a lot of funny games. For the party, Kareem's mother prepared lots of nice cakes. After the party we played some computer games in Kareem's bedroom.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. They played computer games in Kareem's ....
   a) garden b) living room c) bedroom d) kitchen
2. Kareem invited .... friends to his birthday party.
   a) six b) eight c) seven d) two
3. The underlined word (nice) means ....
   a) ugly b) awful c) bad d) beautiful

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did Kareem's mother prepare? ....
5. Where does Kareem live? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - your uncle - How often - visit - do - ?
2. goes - He - bus - by - usually - school - to - .
3. foreign - our projects - We - plants - never - in - grow - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They .... (meet always) in the park.
2. The weather .... (usually is) sunny in Egypt.

7 Punctuate the following.

- do you go to school on friday? ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Mini Forest

(plants - wildlife)

Al-Azhar Corner



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

vegetables - block - green - garden - grow

Toka : What do you do on vacation?
Mariem : I help my neighbors at the community 1) ....
Toka : What's the community garden?
Mariem : It's a big 2) .... space on the roof of an apartm
3) ....
Toka : What do you 4) .... at the community gard
Mariem : We grow 5) .... and fru

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

floor - fine - noisy - live - apartment

Samer : Hello, Wael. How are you?
Wael : Hello, Samer. I'm 1) ....
Samer : Where do you 2) .... n
Wael : I'm in New York with my family. Our 3) ....
is on the sixteenth 4) ....
Samer : How is life in New York?
Wael : New York is very 5) .... all the time. I miss ho

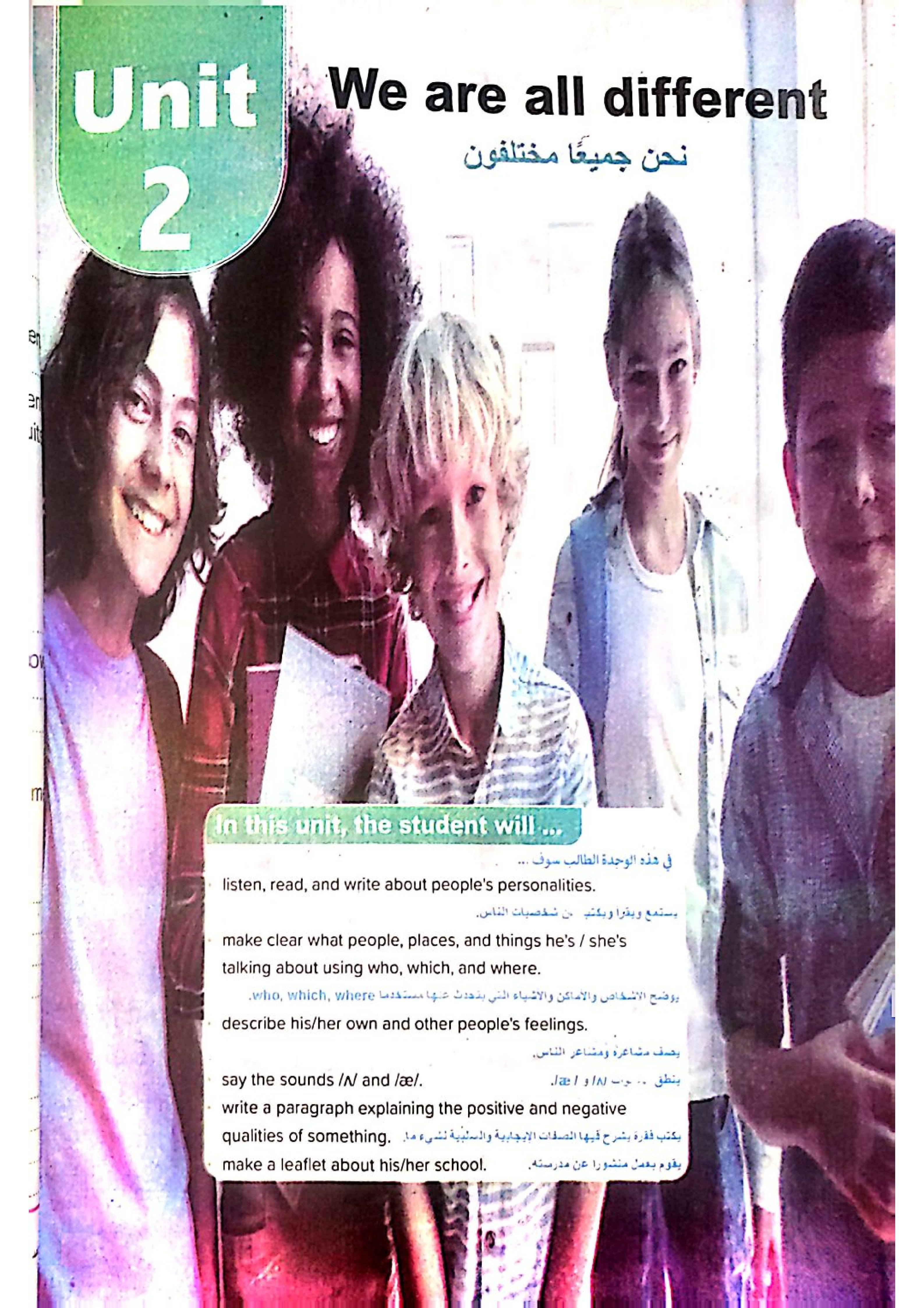
2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	garden	balcony	market	harvest	(.....................
2.	volunteer	produce	need	plant	(.....................
3.	potatoes	neighborhood	onions	peppers	(.....................
4.	yesterday	never	always	rarely	(.....................

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	create	pass	share	winter	(.....................
2.	empty	grass	silent	selfish	(.....................
3.	Scottish	Egyptian	weather	French	(.....................
4.	always	feel	share	cover	(.....................

Help your child deal with such questions.
طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.


Unit 2
We are all different
نحن جميعًا مختلفون
In this unit, the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...
listen, read, and write about people's personalities.
يستمع ويقرأ ويكتب عن شخصيات الناس.
make clear what people, places, and things he's / she's talking about using who, which, and where.
يوضح الأشخاص والأماكن والأشياء التي يتحدث عنها مستخدمًا who, which, where.
describe his/her own and other people's feelings.
يصف مشاعره ومشاعر الناس.
say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/.
ينطق صوتي /ʌ/ و /æ/.
write a paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.
يكتب فقرة يشرح فيها الصفات الإيجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.
make a leaflet about his/her school.
يقوم بعمل منشورا عن مدرسته.

Lesson (1) HE'S VERY CLEVER

Key vocabulary

مات رئيسية

Personality الشخصية


funny
مضحك


shy
خجول


nervous

عصبي - متوتر


calm = quiet
هادئ


polite
مؤدب


friendly
ودود


clever
ماهر


messy
فوضوي


worried
قلق


organized = tidy
منظم


kind
عطوف - لطيف

Extra vocabulary

ات إضافية



respect	احترام / يحترم	intelligent	ذكي	break	راحة (الفسحة)
relaxed	مسترخي	extra copy	نسخة إضافية	helpful	اون
textbooks	الكتب المدرسية	worksheets	أوراق العمل		

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
paint	يلون / يدهن	painted	painted
stay	يبقى / يقيم	stayed	stayed
share	يشارك	shared	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
know	يعرف	knew	known
take	يأخذ	took	taken
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made

Definitions تعريفات

friendly	nice to others, helpful	ودود
shy	worried about talking to people, quiet	خجول
clever	intelligent, good at school work	ماهر - ذكي
polite	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect	مهذب - مؤدب
messy	not tidy or organized	فوضوي
organized	tidy, careful	منظم
nervous	not calm, worried	عصبي - متوتر

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look worried	يبدو قلقًا	Let's + (inf.)	هيا بنا + (مصدر الفعل)
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا	help with	يساعد في
Don't worry.	لا تقلق.	good at	جيد في
I'm not sure.	لست متأكدًا.	welcome to	مرحبًا بك في
show respect	يظهر الاحترام	come on	هيا، (أسلوب تشجيع)

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ:

How does Hazem feel today? Why?

Asser : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

مرحبًا ، حازم. أنا آسر. تبدو قلقًا. هل كل شيء على ما يرام؟

Hazem : Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit **nervous** and **shy**.

مرحبًا، يا آسر! إنه يومي الأول في المدرسة وأنا أشعر بالتوتر والخجل قليلًا.

Asser : Don't worry, we are all **friendly**. I can help you get to know the school.

لا تقلق، نحن جميعًا ودودون. يمكنني مساعدتك في التعرف على المدرسة.

Hazem : Really! Can you? حقًا! هل تستطيع؟

Asser : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break! Let's **go meet** some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

بالتأكيد. يمكنني أن آخذك في جولة وأريك أين فصلك الدراسي وأبقى معك في الاستراحة (الفسحة)! هيا نذهب لمقابلة بعض أصدقائي. أنظر! ها هو باسل. مرحبًا باسل!

Basel : Hi Asser! أهلًا آسر!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very **clever** and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

حازم ، هذا باسل. إنه ذكي جدًا وإنه جيد في الرياضيات. يمكنك أن تسأله إذا احتجت إلى أي مساعدة في واجبك المنزلي! باسل، هذا حازم. إنه يبدأ الدراسة هنا اليوم.

Basel : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school. أهلًا، حازم. مرحبًا بك في مدرستنا.

Asser : He's so **polite**! إنه مهذبٌ جدًا!

Basel : Thanks! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

شكرًا لك! هل معك كل كتبك، يا حازم؟

Hazem : I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit **messy**. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.

لست متأكدًا. لدي الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي في المنزل ولكن أنا فوضوي بعض الشيء. لست متأكدًا أي الكتب الدراسية التي لدي بالفعل.

Basel : We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

يمكننا مشاركة كتابي اليوم. ولدي نسخة إضافية من أوراق العمل ...

Hazem : Wow! You're really **organized**. Thanks, Basel! واو! أنت منظم حقًا. شكرًا يا باسل!

Asser : Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.

هيا، سأريك مكان فصل العلوم.

Help your child listen and read the text.



Read again and answer.

1. How does Asser help Hazem? Why?

....

2. Who is Basel?

....

3. What does Basel offer to share with Hazem?

....

Language Notes

To describe someone. لتصف شخصًا ما.

1) What they look like شكله

e.g. He's tall and fat. e.g. He has short hair.

2) Personality شخصيته

e.g. He / She is kind / shy / clever ..., etc.



My friend Nadine is friendly, kind, and funny.
She has long black hair.



Did you know ?

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

الطريقة التي تتحرك بها تعطي الآخرين معلومات عن شخصيتك. كل شخص لديه طريقة مختلفة للتحرك ، تمامًا مثل أن لكل واحد منا خط يد خاص به. الأشخاص الذين يتحركون بطرق متشابهة غالبًا يصبحون أصدقاء ويعملون معًا بشكل جيد.

Help your child describe a student in his / her class.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's Hazem's .... day at school.
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
2. Asser will stay with him at ....
   a) night b) evening c) break d) morning
3. Hazem is a bit .... and shy.
   a) happy b) friendly c) organized d) nervous
4. All the students are very ....
   a) worried b) friendly c) nervous d) shy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You look .... Is everything OK?
   a) polite b) worried c) happy d) clever
2. It's my first day at school, so I feel a bit ....
   a) happy b) excited c) calm d) nervous
3. Omar is very .... He is good at math
   a) messy b) clever c) polite d) nervous
4. At school, we must have our .... with us
   a) magazines b) stories c) textbooks d) cell phones
5. My friend is very .... He likes talking to people
   a) messy b) nervous c) friendly d) calm
6. My mom always helps me .... my math homework
   a) with b) at c) in d) on
7. I can talk to my friends at ....
   a) exams b) break c) tests d) texts

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

8. Hani is very .... He shows respect to everyone.
   a) shy b) worried c) polite d) messy
9. Salma is never .... She is calm and relaxed.
   a) polite b) shy c) clever d) nervous
10. Salah is .... There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
   a) messy b) shy c) polite d) nervous
11. If a new student is .... , we should help him make friends.
   a) polite b) messy c) shy d) friendly

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hazem is a new student at school. He's a bit worried and shy. Asser is Hazem's new friend at school. Asser helps Hazem get to know the school. He shows him where his classroom is. Asser is clever at maths and he will help Hazem with homework. Hazem forgot his textbooks because he is messy. Asser shares his textbooks with Hazem.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hazem is a new .... at school.
   a) teacher b) vet c) brother d) student
2. Asser is Hazem's new .... at school.
   a) friend b) brother c) sister d) cousin
3. The opposite of the underlined word "messy" is ....
   a) polite b) shy c) organized d) nervous

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How does Asser help Hazem?

....

5. What is Asser good at?

....



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - My - kind - friend - and - friendly - .

....

2. have - books - I - a lot of - my room - in - .

....

3. likes - people - Mona - to - talking - .

....

4. does - feel - today - How - Hazem - ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

1. he's so polite

....

2. salma is calm and relaxed

....

3. What does Basel offer to share with hazem

....



6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Describe the students in your class

Guiding elements:

(friendly - clever - shy)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) WE ARE PROUD OF OUR SCHOOL!

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

laboratory	المعمل	court	الساحة - الملعب
garden	الحديقة	IT Building	مبني تكنولوجيا المعلومات
gymnasium / gym	صالة الألعاب الرياضية	water fountain	نافورة مياه
spaceship	سفينة فضاء	building	مبني

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

poster	ملصق	pharmacy	صيدلية	tourist	سائح - سياحي
laptop	لاب توب	information	معلومات	students	طلاب
playground	ملعب	website	موقع إلكتروني	modern	معاصر-حديث
bench	مقعد	planet	كوكب	alive	على قيد الحياة
TV series	مسلسل تلفزيوني	fantasy	خيالي	equipment	أدوات - معدات

School subjects المواد الدراسية

Physical Education	التربية البدنية	Information Technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات		
French	اللغة الفرنسية	math	الرياضيات	science	العلوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	borrowed
repeat	يكرر	repeated	repeated
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
find	يجد	found	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

proud of	فخور بـ	five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية
do an experiment	يقوم بتجربة علمية	popular with	محبوب لدى

lelp your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



El Fouad School

Home **About** **Contact**

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.

مرحبًا بكم في مدرسة الفؤاد، مكان نفتخر به. نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة ويسعدنا أن نعرضها لكم. يرجى دراسة الخريطة ومعرفة مكان المباني الرئيسية، والغرض من استخدامها.

1) The Ahmed Zewail Building

This is the place **where** students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment **which** classes need to do experiments.

1) مبنى أحمد زويل:
هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. يوجد أربعة فصول دراسية واثنان من المختبرات الجديدة. تحتوي هذه المختبرات على جميع الأدوات التي يحتاج الطلاب إليها لإجراء التجارب.

2) The West Court

This is a large open area **where** students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher **who** helps in the garden.

2) الساحة الغربية:
هذه منطقة مفتوحة كبيرة حيث يقضي الطلاب وقتهم بالخارج. هناك ملعب وساحة رياضية. هناك أيضًا مقاعد للجلوس تحت الأشجار و نافورة مياه. يمكن للأطفال أيضا زراعة النباتات مع الأستاذ مهدي. وهو المعلم الذي يساعد في الحديقة.

3) The IT Building

This is the building **where** you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets **which** students can borrow.

3) مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات:
هذا هو المبنى حيث يمكنك إيجاد فصول الكمبيوتر. يأتي الطلاب إلى هنا من أجل حصص تكنولوجيا المعلومات الخاصة بهم. لدينا أكثر من 50 جهاز كمبيوتر مكتبي، بالإضافة إلى أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة والأجهزة اللوحية التي يمكن للطلاب استعارتها.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

4) The 2024 Gym

The yellow building is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during Physical Education lessons. There are some teachers **who** run after-school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).

4) صالة الألعاب الرياضية 2024:

المبنى الأصفر هو صالة الألعاب الرياضية الجديدة لدينا. نستخدمها في كرة السلة وكرة اليد والجمباز أثناء حصص التربية البدنية. هناك بعض المعلمين الذين يديرون النوادي الرياضية بعد المدرسة هنا أيضًا، مثل كرة القدم الخماسية (الأستاذ عفيفي، قسم الرياضيات) والتنس (الأستاذة منال، قسم اللغة الفرنسية).



- **Answer the following questions.**

1. The text is about ....

(a poster about a school - a tourist information website)

2. Where do students spend time outside?

....

3. Can students borrow laptops and tablets?

....

Language Focus

1) Relative Pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

- We use relative pronouns to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

تستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء معلومات أكثر حول شخص أو شيء أو مكان مفرد أو جمع.



1 who

We can use "who" to talk about people.

تستخدم "who" بمعنى "الذي / التي" للإشارة إلى الأشخاص "العاقل".

e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

2 which

We can use "which" to talk about things.

تستخدم "which" بمعنى "الذي / التي" للإشارة إلى الأشياء "غير العاقل".

e.g. These are the shoes which I wear to school.

3 where

We can use "where" to talk about places.

تستخدم "where" بمعنى "حيث" للإشارة إلى الأماكن.

e.g. The laboratory is the place where we do experiments.

Remember

- When we join two sentences with who, which or where, we don't repeat the noun or pronoun in the second sentence.

عندما نربط جملتين باستخدام who ، which ، where، فلا نكرر الاسم أو الضمير في الجملة الثانية.

e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher. Mr Afifi runs the football club.

Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

e.g. This is the place. Students study science there.

This is the place where students study science.

Help your child use relative pronouns.

Lesson (2)

2) -ed and -ing adjectives

الصفات المنتهية بـ ed و ing

- We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ed- لوصف شعور الشخص.

e.g. I am excited! e.g. She is interested in science.

- We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ing- لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء التي تسبب لنا المشاعر.

e.g. The football game is exciting. e.g. This TV show is really interesting.

Adjectives

-ed				-ing			
interested	مهتم	bored	شاعر بالملل	interesting	شيق	exciting	مثير
excited	متحمس	tired	مُتعب	surprising	مدهش	tiring	مُرهق / شاق
surprised	مندهش			boring	ممل		

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series **which** is popular with people of all age groups. It's **interesting** because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world **where** humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

واندا لاند هو مسلسل تلفزيوني خيالي والذي يحظى بشعبية بين الناس من جميع الفئات العمرية. إنه مثير للاهتمام لأنه يحدث في المستقبل على كوكب يسمى واندا. هذا عالم يعيش فيه البشر لأن الأرض الآن شديدة الحرارة.



The series tells the story of a boy called Frey **who** wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy **who** finds life on Wanda **boring**. He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship **which** is travelling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them.

I'm **excited** to see what happens next!

يحكي المسلسل قصة صبي يدعى فراي الذي يريد العودة إلى الأرض للبحث عن عائلته. فراي فتى ذكي وهادئ يجد الحياة في واندا مملة، ليس لديه الكثير من الأصدقاء لكنه يعتقد أن عائلته ربما لا تزال على قيد الحياة ، لذلك يقرر الاختباء على متن مركبة فضائية والتي ستسافر إلى كوكب الأرض. المشكلة أنه لا يعرف حقًا مكان والديه وقد لا يجدهما.

انا متحمس لرؤية ما سيحدث بعد ذلك!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dalia is the girl .... sits next to me in the English class.
   a) which b) where c) why d) who
2. An ostrich is a big bird .... can't fly.
   a) who b) which c) where d) whose
3. This is the street .... my uncle lives.
   a) which b) who c) why d) where
4. Hi, Fareeda. I'm .... to see you!
   a) surprised b) surprising c) surprise d) surprises
5. I was really .... last night.
   a) tire b) tires c) tired d) tiring
6. His birthday party was ....
   a) excited b) exciting c) excite d) excites

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. These are the computers .... (who) we use for projects.
2. Laila is the tall girl .... (where) has red hair.
3. I'm .... (interesting) in English.
4. An ostrich is a big bird .... (who) can't fly.
5. This is the street .... (which) my uncle lives.
6. I'm .... (surprising) to see you.
7. Her birthday party was .... (excited).
8. This is the classroom .... (who) we study science.
9. Bees are insects .... (who) make honey.
10. A pharmacy is a shop .... (which) you can buy medicine.
11. The children feel .... (boring) when there is nothing to do.
12. The results of the students' last test are .... (surprised).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The West ...... is a large open area where students spend time outside.
   a) Building b) Court c) Playground d) Fountain
2. There is a .... and playing field.
   a) court b) building c) playground d) fountain
3. There are also .... to sit on under the trees and a water fountain.
   a) benches b) tables c) desks d) cupboard
4. Mr Mahdi is the teacher who helps in the ....
   a) playground b) garden c) playground d) farms

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I really love the red flowers .... grow in our garden.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
2. The playground is the place .... we play football.
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
3. This is the math question .... I don't understand.
   a) where b) who c) why d) which
4. Is Magdy the boy .... lives in your building?
   a) who b) where c) which d) whose
5. This is the classroom .... we study science.
   a) which b) when c) where d) what
6. I'm .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a) interest b) interested c) interesting d) interests
7. The children feel .... when there is nothing to do.
   a) bores b) bore c) boring d) bored
8. We have our Physical Education lessons in the ....
   a) classroom b) laboratory c) gymnasium d) library

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

playground - classrooms - show - gymnasium - proud

Welcome to El Fouad school. We are 1).................. of our new, modern buildings. We are also happy to 2) .... them to you. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories in our school. There's a 3) .... and playing field. There are over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets. There is a 4) .... to play basketball, handball, and gymnastics.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. proud - We - are - of - school - our - .

....

2. a water - in - There's - fountain - garden - the - .

....

3. insects - make - Bees - are - honey - which - .

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. A pharmacy is a shop .... (which) you can buy medicine.
2. Laila is the tall girl .... (where) has red dress.
3. These are the desks .... (who) we sit on.
4. She is .... (interesting) in science.
5. The football game is .... (excited).
6. The children are very .... (excite) because they have new toys.

6 Punctuate the following.

- this is the teacher who teaches us math

....



7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your school

Guiding elements:

(big - modern - buildings - laboratory - gymnasium - IT)

Lesson (5) Part (A)

HARE GETS SCARED

Vocabulary الكلمات

hare	أرنب بري	scared	خائف
sunny day	يوم مشمس	scare	يخيف
stomach	معدة	angry	غاضب
lake	بحيرة	hungry	جائع
loud voice	صوت عالٍ	the bravest	الأشجع
nobody	لا أحد	forest	غابة
noise	ضوضاء	suddenly	فجأة
carrots	جزر	mouse / mice	فأر / فئران

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
shout	يصرخ	shouted	shouted
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
lie	يستلقي	lay	lain
run	يجري	ran	run

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lie in	يستلقي في	high in the air	عاليًا في الهواء
come in	يدخل	look at each other	ينظران إلى بعضهما البعض
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	run away	يهرب / يجري بعيدًا
get to + مكان	يصل إلى	afraid of	خائف من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Who is in Hare's house?

The beginning

It's a sunny day, and Hare **lies** in the grass. Suddenly, her **stomach** makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's **hungry**! Hare runs back home. But when she **gets to** her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare.

"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.

إنه يوم مشمس، والأرنبة البرية ترقد في العشب. فجأة، تحدث بطنها ضوضاء عالية. تتذكر الأرنبة الجزر الذي في مطبخها. إنها جائعة!
تسرع الأرنبة عائدة إلى المنزل. لكن عندما تصل إلى بابها ، تتوقف. ما هذا الضجيج؟ شيء ما يتحرك داخل منزل الأرنبة!
تسأل الأرنبة "هل يوجد شخص ما؟".
فرد عليها بصوت عالي "ابق مكانك!".

The middle

Hare is very **surprised**. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again, "Hare, don't **come in**. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food".

Hare is very **scared**. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks **interested**. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also **delicious**."

الأرنبة مندهشة جدًا. من الذي في منزلها؟ ثم يتحدث الصوت مرة أخرى، " أيتها الأرنبة، لا تدخلي. إذا دخلتي، سوف آكلك. الأرانب طعامي المفضل".
الأرنبة خائفة جدًا. الحيوان الذي في منزلها يريد أن يأكلها. أسرعت الأرنبة إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها القرد الذكي.
تقول الأرنبة "أيها القرد، من فضلك ساعدني!". "هناك حيوان في منزلي، ويريد أن يأكلني!"
يبدو القرد مهتمًا. يقول القرد "حيوان؟ هيا بنا نذهب ونرى."
يعودون إلى منزل الأرنبة. يصرخ القرد: "من هناك بالداخل؟"
يجيب صوت: " أيها القرد، لا تدخل. سوف آكلك إذا دخلت. الأرانب طعامي المفضل، لكن القردة لذيذة أيضًا."

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Monkey and Hare **look at each other**. They are both very scared. They run to the **lake** where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"
"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, and bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"
Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.
"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."
"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

ينظر القرد والأرنبة إلى بعضهما البعض. كلاهما خائف جدًا. يسرعون إلى البحيرة حيث يعيش صديقهم الفيل. يخبران الفيل "هناك حيوان يأكل الأرانب والقردة في منزل الأرنبة، نحن بحاجة إلى مساعدتك!"
يقول الفيل: "لا تقلقوا، أنا قادم! أنا أكبر وأقوى وأشجع حيوان في العالم. لا يستطيع أحد أن يأكلني!"
يذهب الفيل إلى باب الأرنبة ويصرخ "أنا داخل!"
يقول الحيوان في الداخل"توقف! أنا جائع وأحب أن آكل..."
يصرخ الفيل"لا يمكنك أن تأكلني!" "أنا الأكبر والأقوى ..."

The End

Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps **high in the air**! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice.
"Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.
Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"
Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say.
"What scares you might be much smaller than you".
They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

وفجأة ، يفتح باب الأرنبة ، ويخرج فأر صغير مسرعًا. يقفز الفيل عاليًا في الهواء! إنه خائف جدًا. لأنه كما يعلم الجميع، الفيلة تخاف من الفئران.
"النجدة! فأرة! فأرة!"يصرخ الفيل ويهرب بسرعة.
تنظر الفأرة إلى الأرنبة والقرد وتقول:" أنا آسفه. هل أنتما غاضبان؟"
تبدأ الأرنبة والقرد في الضحك. ويقولان:" لا ، نحن لسنا غاضبين. " إن ما يخيفك ربما يكون أصغر منك بكثير".
يضحك الجميع مرة أخرى. ثم تدخل الأرنبة لتأكل جزرها أخيرًا.

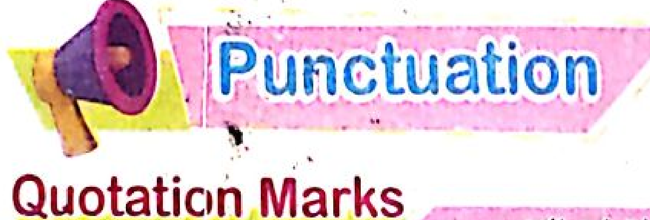
1 Read again and write (T) or (F).

1. Hare feels hungry. (..............................)
2. Hare only asks Elephant for help. (..............................)
3. Mouse says she is sorry. (..............................)

2 Who says each thing in the story? Read and write the names.

Elephant - Hare - Monkey - Mouse

1. "Is somebody there?" asked ....
2. "I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world" said ....
3. "An animal? Let's go and see," said ....
4. "I'll eat you if you come in," said ....



Quotation Marks

علامات التنصيص



1) When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called "quotation marks".

١) عندما تتكلم الشخصيات في القصص، فإننا نظهر ذلك باستخدام علامة ترقيم تسمى "علامات التنصيص".

e.g. "Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

2) We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.

٢) نضع علامات التنصيص قبل وبعد الجملة.

3) We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.

٣) نستخدم أفعالًا مثل يقول، يصرخ، ويسأل لنقول من المتكلم.

e.g. "What do you mean?" asked Monkey.

e.g. "I thought you were angry," said Mouse.

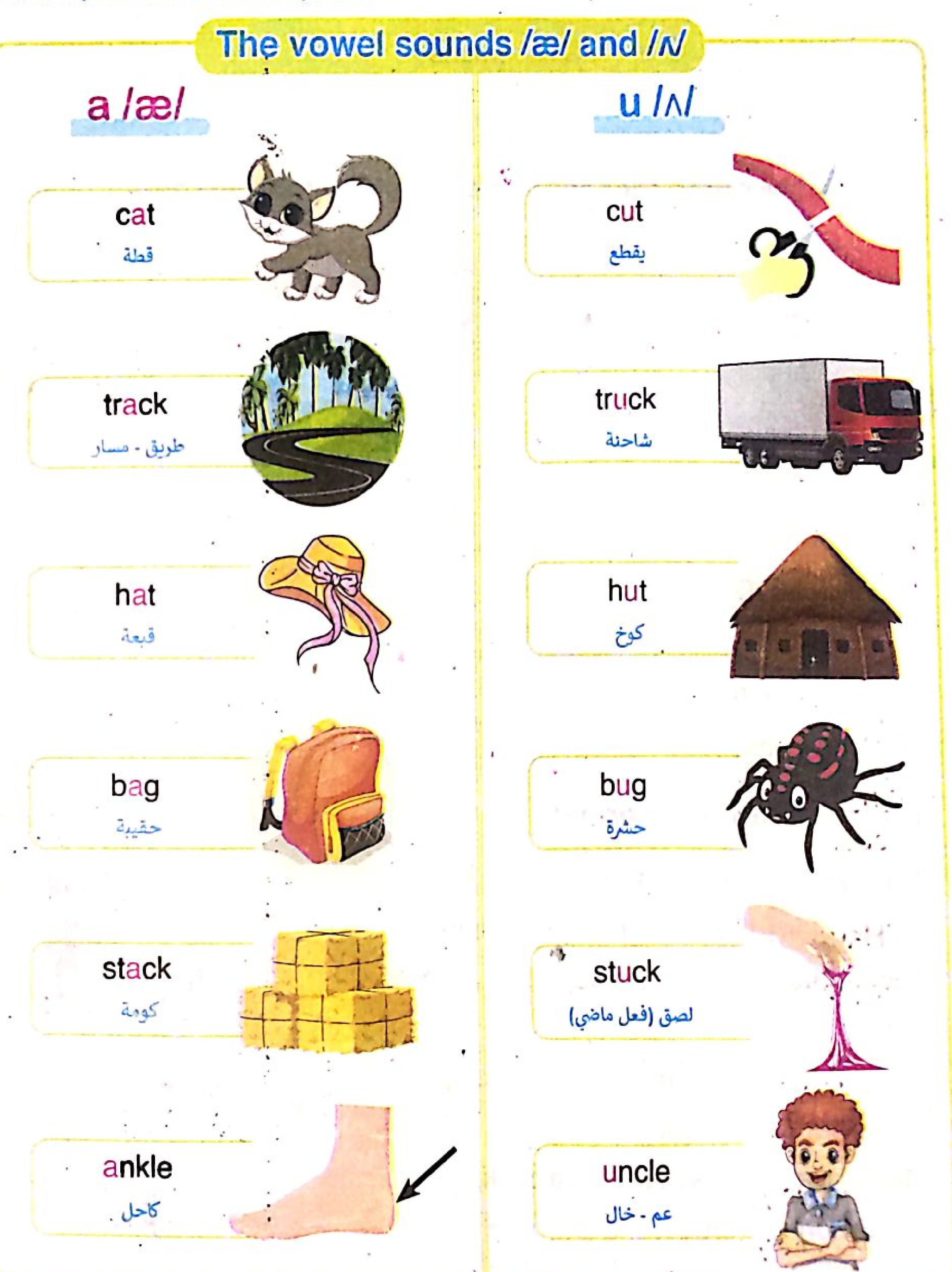
Help your child identify quotation marks.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على علامات التنصيص

Lesson (3) Part (B)

PRONUNCIATION

Look, listen and repeat. انظر، و استمع وردد.



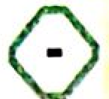
Help your child identify the sounds /æ/ and /ʌ/.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأصوات /æ/ و /ʌ/.



Note:

إحيانًا ننطق حرف (o) مثل الصوت /ʌ/ في بعض الكلمات مثل:

some	money	onion
come	honey	stomach



Is the sound the same as cat or cut? Listen and check.

	cat	cut
animal	✓	
hungry		✓
some		
happy		
funny		
angry		
duck		
onion		
come		

Listen, read and repeat.



استمع واقرأ وردّد.

Happy Harry has some nuts.
Happy Harry has some nuts and a duck.
Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck, and some honey.
Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck, some honey, and a brush.
Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck, some honey, a brush, and an onion.



Help your child identify the sounds /æ/ and /ʌ/.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأصوات /æ/ و /ʌ/.

Estimating numbers تقدير الأعداد

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number.

عندما لا نحتاج إلى الحساب بدقة، فإننا نقدر عددًا تقريبيًا. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية لأعلى أو لأسفل لأقرب عدد صحيح.

- إذا كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية أقل من 5 نحذفه.
- إذا كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية 5 أو أكثر يتم إضافة واحد على العدد الصحيح.

e.g. 2.66 → 3.00 (أكبر من 5)

e.g. 3.95 → 4.00 (أكبر من 5)

e.g. 2.20 → 2.00 (أقل من 5)

e.g. 4.15 → 4.00 (أقل من 5)

Round these measurements up or down to the nearest whole number.

1) 2.03 m ....
2) 12.96 m ....
3) 1.11 m ....
4) 7.91 m ....

Work with a partner and read the texts. Discuss

اعمل مع زميل واقرأ النص. وناقش.

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

جدار فصل حاتم يحتاج إلى طلاء. يحسب التلاميذ كمية الدهان التي يحتاجونها لطلاء الجدار. يقيسون الجدار ويسجلون القياسات. ثم يبحثون على الإنترنت ليروا عدد علب الطلاء التي يحتاجونها.



Classroom wall measurements

Wall = h 2.66 m x w 7.95 m

1) How do you think the students calculate how much paint they need?

١) في رأيك كيف يحسب الطلاب كمية الطلاء التي يحتاجون إليها؟

2) How many liters of paint will they have left over?

٢) كم عدد لترات الطلاء التي ستتبقى؟

- To estimate how much paint they need, the students round their measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint.

لتقدير كمية الطلاء التي يحتاجون إليها، يقوم الطلاب بتقريب قياساتهم إلى أقرب عدد صحيح، ثم يضربونهم لتقدير المساحة المراد طلائها.

$$2.66 (\longrightarrow 3.00) \times 7.95 (\longrightarrow 8.00) = 24 \text{ m}^2$$

- Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (44 square meters) to cover 24 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

يمكن أن تغطي كل علبة مساحة 22 مترًا مربعًا، لذلك يحتاج الطلاب إلى علبتين (44 مترًا مربعًا) لتغطية 24 مترًا مربعًا. سيكون لديهم ما لا يقل عن 20 لترًا متبقية.

Round up these measurements to the nearest whole number. How many cans of paint do you need for each area?

1. 2.12 m x 3.85 m = ... m^2, ... can(s).

2. 7.65 m x 4.3 m = ... m^2, ... can(s).

3. 9.41 m x 4.22 m = ... m^2, ... can(s).

Help your child identify how to estimate number

ساعد طفلك في التعرف على كيفية تقدير الأعداد.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather is ....
   a) rainy b) foggy c) snowy d) sunny
2. The .... lies in the grass.
   a) Elephant b) Hare c) Monkey d) Mouse
3. The Hare feels ....
   a) hungry b) angry c) tired d) excited
4. The Hare likes to eat ....
   a) bananas b) cucumbers c) oranges d) carrots

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hare .... in the grass.
   a) lies b) flies c) makes d) shouts
2. There is a lot of .... in the house. I can't sleep.
   a) carrots b) noise c) food d) birds
3. Hares like to eat ....
   a) mangoes b) carrots c) fish d) birds
4. Elephants are .... of mice.
   a) happy b) heavy c) afraid d) brave
5. I'm .... I need something to eat.
   a) angry b) hungry c) happy d) scared

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stomach - mice - Hare - carrots - hungry

It's a sunny day. The 1) .... lies in the grass. Her 2) .... makes a loud noise. The Hare is 3) .... She remembers the 4) .... in her kitchen. She runs back home to get the carrots.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. She's hungry. She remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She runs back home. But there is an animal in her house tells her not to come or he will eat her. Hare is very scared. She asks the Monkey to help her. The animal in Hare's house tells the Monkey not to come in or he will eat him. The Elephant is the biggest and the strongest animal. The Hare and the Monkey ask the Elephant to help them. The Elephant goes to Hare's door. Suddenly, Hare's door opens and a small Mouse runs out. Elephant is scared.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The weather is ....
   a) cold b) windy c) sunny d) rainy
2. The underlined word "scared" means ....
   a) happy b) sad c) frightened d) kind
3. The Hare lies in the ....
   a) bed b) grass c) water d) sand

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the biggest and the strongest animal? ....
5. Why are the Hare and the Monkey scared? ....

5 Circle the word with a different sound.

1.	nuts	duck	angry	some
2.	brush	ant	onion	honey
3.	bag	hat	stack	money

6 Round up these decimal numbers to the nearest whole number.

1. 2.12 → ....
2. 5.72 → ....
3. 7.33 → ....
4. 6.86 → ....
5. 3.63 x 7.3 → .... x .... = ...
6. 9.5 x 4.2 → .... x .... = ...

7 Punctuate the following.

1. hare hears a noise inside her house ....
2. monkey becomes scared ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- WRITING
- PROJECT

Look and read.
انظر واقرأ.


lizard
سحلية


bird
طائر


fish
سمك


cat
قطة

Vocabulary
الكلمات

pet	حيوان أليف - يداعب	sharp claws	مخالب حادة
clean	نظيف	beautiful	جميلة
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
petting	ملاطفة - تدليل	bus stop	موقف الأتوبيس
points	نقاط	well-being	راحة - سعادة
touch	يلمس	independent	مستقل
soft fur	فرو ناعم	good for	مفيد لـ
keep an animal	يربي حيوان		

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

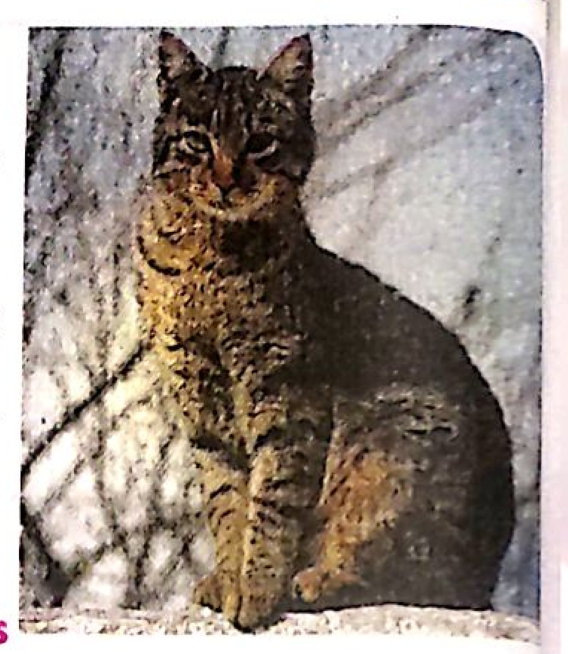
Present		Past	P.P
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
pet	يُدلل	petted	petted
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for a walk	للتمشية	It's true that	إنه حقيقي أن
It's difficult to	من الصعب أن	find food to	يجد طعامًا لـ

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

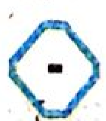
Read Hani's paragraph about the best animal to keep as a pet



Cats Are the Best Pets

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur **which** is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people **but** they are **independent**, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have **sharp claws** and teeth, **but** they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you **pet** a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your **well-being**, too.

القطط حيواناتي المفضلة وأعتقد أنها أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة. إنها جميلة ولها فراء ناعم ومن الجميل لمسه. إنها حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة وعادة ما تكون ودودة. إنها تحب الناس لكنها مستقلة ، لذلك لا تحتاج إلى أخذهم للتمشية كل يوم. صحيح أن القطط لها مخالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضًا إنه عندما تداعب قطة فهذا يجعلك سعيدًا، لذلك فإنها جيدة لسعادتك أيضًا.



Positive and negative points about keeping a cat.

النقاط الإيجابية والسلبية عن تربية القطط.

Positive	Negative
- calm and clean - usually friendly - have soft fur - beautiful fur - petting a cat makes you happy	have sharp claws and teeth

Help your child read about cats.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن القطط.

Tip!

You can use "but" to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence.

يمكنك استخدام "but" لربط فكرتين متناقضتين في الجملة.

You can mention a negative point, then use "but" to explain why it's not really a problem. يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية ثم استخدام "but" لشرح سبب عدم كونها مشكلة بالفعل.

e.g. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

1 Join these sentences using "but"

1. We want to go to the beach. It's raining today.

   We want to go to the beach, but it's raining today.

2. Lizards make good pets. It's difficult to find food for them.

   ...., but ....

3. My new school is great. It's far from my house.

   ...., but ....

4. Dalia is polite and clever. She isn't friendly.

   ...., but ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I like most types of fruit, ... I don't like mangoes.
   a) and b) but c) as d) so
2. I like English, ... I don't like science.
   a) but b) and c) so d) as
3. Dalia is polite and clever, ... she isn't friendly.
   a) so b) as c) and d) but
4. My new school is great, ... it's far from my house.
   a) as b) so c) but d) and

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He is rich, ... (so) he is unhappy.
2. He is very clever, ... (and) he can't answer this question.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... are my favorites animals
   a) Dogs b) Lizards c) Cats d) Lions
2. Cats have .... fur
   a) soft b) hard c) rough d) sharp
3. Cats are usually ....
   a) shy b) nervous c) worried d) friendly
4. Cats like people but they are ....
   a) independent b) dependent c) unfriendly d) unkind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Cats are my favorite ....
   a) birds b) animals c) reptiles d) flies
2. Cats are beautiful with soft ....
   a) feathers b) far c) fur d) hat
3. Cats like people but they are ....
   a) independent b) dependent c) bad d) ugly
4. Cats have .... claws and teeth
   a) blunt b) sharp c) cool d) cold

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

serious - walk - teeth - scared - happy

Cats like people but they are independent. You don't need to take them for a 1) .... every day. Cats have sharp 2) .... but they on use them when they are 3) .... People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you 4) ...., so they are good for your well-being, to



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Cats have soft ....
   a) hair b) fur c) skin d) eyes
2. "Friendly" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) sad b) nice c) hungry d) angry
3. Cats are .... so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.
   a) independent b) dirty c) noisy d) unfriendly

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Mention a positive point about cats. ....
5. When do cats use their sharp claws and teeth? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - my - Cats - animals - favorite - .

....

2. the beach - but - We - to - want - to go - today - it's raining - .

....



6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite pet

Guiding elements:

(canary - colorful - feathers - eyes - beautiful - sing - happy)

Writing Corner

Your best friend

My name is Omar. I'm in grade 6. I go to a primary school. There are a lot of students in my school. My best friend is Mazen. He is kind, friendly and funny. He always helps me with my math homework. He always stays with me at break. We talk and play together. He is tall and has short black hair. He is polite and organized. He always has his textbooks. I like him very much.

My school

The school where I learn is very big. It has many buildings. There is a place where students study science. We do experiments in the laboratory. There is the IT building where students have their IT lessons. There is a new gymnasium where students have their P.E lessons. During the break we go to the court where we relax at break. There are benches to sit on under the trees. I'm proud of my school.

My best pet

I like animals very much. I have a pet at home. It's a pet puppy. My dad bought it for me on my birthday. I think puppies are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and friendly. It's good to play and walk with puppies in the garden. They make me happy.

Help your child write paragraphs.

Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

polite	مؤدب	poster	ملصق
nervous	متوتر	proud	فخور
shy	خجول	equipment	أدوات - معدات
calm - quiet	هادئ	laboratory	معمل
clever	ماهر	court	ساحة
scared	خائف	bench	مقعد
messy	فوضوي	fountain	نافورة
funny	مضحك	Gymnasium / gym	صالة الألعاب الرياضية
organized	منظم	five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية
kind / friendly	لطيف - ودود	well-being	سعادة

School Subjects

Physical Education	التربية البدنية	Information Technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات

French	اللغة الفرنسية	math	الرياضيات	science	العلوم

Pronunciation

/æ/	/ʌ/
cat	cut
bag	bug

Language

Relative pronouns: (who - which - where)

1- Mr Ali is the teacher who is very kind. (Who for people)

2- This is the cat which drank the milk. (Which for things / animals)

3- The school where I learn is very big. (Where for places)

Adjectives with -ed / -ing:

- I'm excited.
- The football game is exciting.

Math

Estimating Numbers:

- 2.12 ⟶ 2.00
- 7.81 ⟶ 8.00

Lesson (1)

ب	ماهر
عوي	استراحة / الفسحة
م	متوتر
ق عمل	هادئ
ب مدرسية	ودود

Lesson (2)

ة الألعاب الرياضية	فخور بـ
تعبير	تجربة علمية
يوم	معمل
بع إلكتروني	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
بقة	كرة اليد
ورة	ساحة
مد	أدوات - معدات
ة القدم الخماسية	ملصق

Lesson (3)

ا في الهواء	أرنب بري
ن	جائع
ق	غاضب
حنة	يصرخ
ل القدم	بصل

Lessons (4 & 5)

	سحلية
لب	طائر
ن أليف	مستقل
ف	جاد

Help your child dictate these words.

Activities on Unit (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My favorite animals are ....
   a) dogs b) cats c) lizards d) fish
2. Cats are beautiful with soft ....
   a) teeth b) claws c) fur d) ears
3. They are .... and calm animals which are usually friendly.
   a) dirty b) unfriendly c) unkind d) clean
4. They like .... but they are independent.
   a) fish b) animals c) insects d) people

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara is very .... She likes talking to people.
   a) friendly b) shy c) messy d) clever
2. Cats are good for your ....
   a) health b) study c) well-being d) teeth
3. The word "organized" has the same meaning as ....
   a) tidy b) shy c) messy d) afraid
4. Ali is .... He always shows respect to others.
   a) shy b) nervous c) messy d) polite

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

which - popular - Earth - interesting - planet

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It is 1) .... with people of all age groups. It's 2) .... because it takes place in the future on a 3) .... called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the 4) .... is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who want to return to Earth to look for his family.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry. Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare. "Stay where you are!" says a loud voice. Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food." Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest .

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hare's stomach makes a loud noise. She is ....
   a) happy b) hungry c) sad d) thirsty
2. When Hare gets home, she is very ....
   a) happy b) sad c) surprised d) clever
3. The underlined expression "runs back" means ....
   a) visit b) stay c) return d) watch

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the weather like this day? ....
5. What does Hare do when she is very scared? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Ali - does - help - How - Asser - ?
2. the street - my uncle - This is - where - lives - .
3. have - teeth - Cats - sharp - and - claws - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. This is the math question .... (who) I don't understand.
2. I was really .... (tiring) last night.

7 Punctuate the following.

- what's your favorite pet ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Your school

(learn - laboratory)

Help your child deal with such questions.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the following dialog with:

day - look - friendly - you - meet

Asser	:	Hi, you 1) .... worried. Are you a new student?
Hazem	:	Hello, it's my first 2) .... at school and I feel nervous.
Asser	:	Don't worry, we are all 3) .... here. I can help.
Hazem	:	Really! Can 4) .... ?
Asser	:	Sure. Let's 5) .... some of our friends.

Read and complete the following dialog with:

teeth - do - cat - fur - favorite

Mariam	:	Do you like animals?
Toka	:	Yes, I 1) ....
Mariam	:	What's your 2) .... pet?
Toka	:	It's the 3) ....
Mariam	:	What does the cat have?
Toka	:	It has soft 4) .... and sharp 5) ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	polite	nervous	poster	shy	(........................)
2.	scared	laboratory	court	fountain	(........................)
3.	talked	painted	stayed	take	(........................)
4.	interesting	tiring	bored	surprising	(........................)
5.	elephant	fur	hare	monkey	(........................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	messy	court	friendly	clever	(........................)
2.	gymnasium	playground	laboratory	cut	(........................)
3.	science	find	math	French	(........................)
4.	boring	interested	excited	surprised	(........................)
5.	who	interest	where	which	(........................)

Unit 3 Vacation plans

خطط الاجازة

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وضع خطط الاجازات.
- talk about facts using clauses with **if** or **when**.
  يتحدث عن الحقائق باستخدام عبارات بها **if** أو **when**.
- talk about when something happens using prepositions of time
  يتحدث عن وقت حدوث شيء ما باستخدام حروف جر الوقت
- read and listen to determine the central message.
  يقرأ ويستمع لتحديد الرسالة الرئيسية.
- practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.
  يتدرب على نطق الأصوات الساكنة /w/ و /v/ في أول الكلمة.
- write a blog post about a place he / she likes visiting.
  يكتب مدونة عن زيارة إلى مكان يحب زيارته.
- research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.
  يبحث ويقوم بعمل كتيب عن مكان لقضاء عطلة.

Lesson (1) LET'S GO QUAD BIKING ON TUESDAY

Activities أنشطة



explore the souks
يستكشف الأسواق

climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret
يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة



take photos
يلتقط صور



go quad biking
يقود دراجة رباعية



ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الملاهي



visit the Manial Palace Museum
يزور متحف قصر المنيل

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

vacation	عطلة - إجازة	seat	مقعد	desert	صحراء
project	مشروع	sunset	غروب الشمس	theme park	ملاهي
cool	رائع	hotel	فندق	view	منظر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
mention	يذكر mentioned	mentioned
climb	يتسلق climbed	climbed
arrive	يصل arrived	arrived
explore	يستكشف explored	explored
plan	يخطط planned	planned

Help your child identify these words
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
go	يذهب	went	gone
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left
take	يأخذ - يستغرق	took	taken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

excited about	متحمس لـ	look interesting	يبدو شيق
get to	يصل إلى	on Sunday	في يوم الأحد
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	ride on	يركب على

Language Functions

Making suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات

عند تقديم اقتراح أو فكرة، نستخدم هذه التعبيرات.

- Let's + inf. (مصدر الفعل) .... هيا بنا ......
- We can + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) يمكننا....
- Should we + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ......? هل من الممكن ......؟ / هل ينبغي علينا ......؟

Accepting suggestions: قبول الاقتراحات

- Good idea! فكرة جيدة!
- Ok, cool! حسنًا ، رائع!
- Great! عظيم!

Refusing suggestions رفض الاقتراحات

- No, thanks. لا، شكرًا.
- I'm sorry. I'm busy. آسف، أنا مشغول.



Should we explore the Souks on Monday?



Yes, good idea.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Samer : I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

أنا متحمس لعطلتنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.

Basel : Me too! **Why don't we** try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

وأنا أيضًا. لم لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟ يمكننا السفر إلى القاهرة. هناك الكثير لنراه.

Samer : Yes. We can visit the **Manial Palace Museum** first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

نعم يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولًا. إذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف يوم الأحد، يمكننا يوم الاثنين التقاط صور لمشروعي المدرسي.

Basel : **Okay, cool!** My mom can go with us. She loves museums. **Let's** also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

حسنًا، رائع! يمكن أن تذهب أمي معنا. فهي تحب المتاحف. هيا بنا أيضًا نذهب إلى الملاهي ونركب قطار الملاهي.

Samer : **Okay!** Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

حسنًا، لنقم بذلك يوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن خارج القاهرة تبدو ممتعة.

Basel : Like what?

مثل ماذا؟

Samer : We can go **quad biking** in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

يمكننا قيادة الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء في الجيزة. إذا ركبنا الأتوبيس، سوف نصل في حوالي ثلاثين دقيقة.

Basel : **Great!** We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

عظيم! يمكننا الذهاب مبكرًا يوم الأربعاء ونعود إلى الفندق قبل المساء.

Samer : Yes. What else can we do?

نعم. ماذا أيضًا يمكننا أن نفعل؟

Basel : Let's **climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret** on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

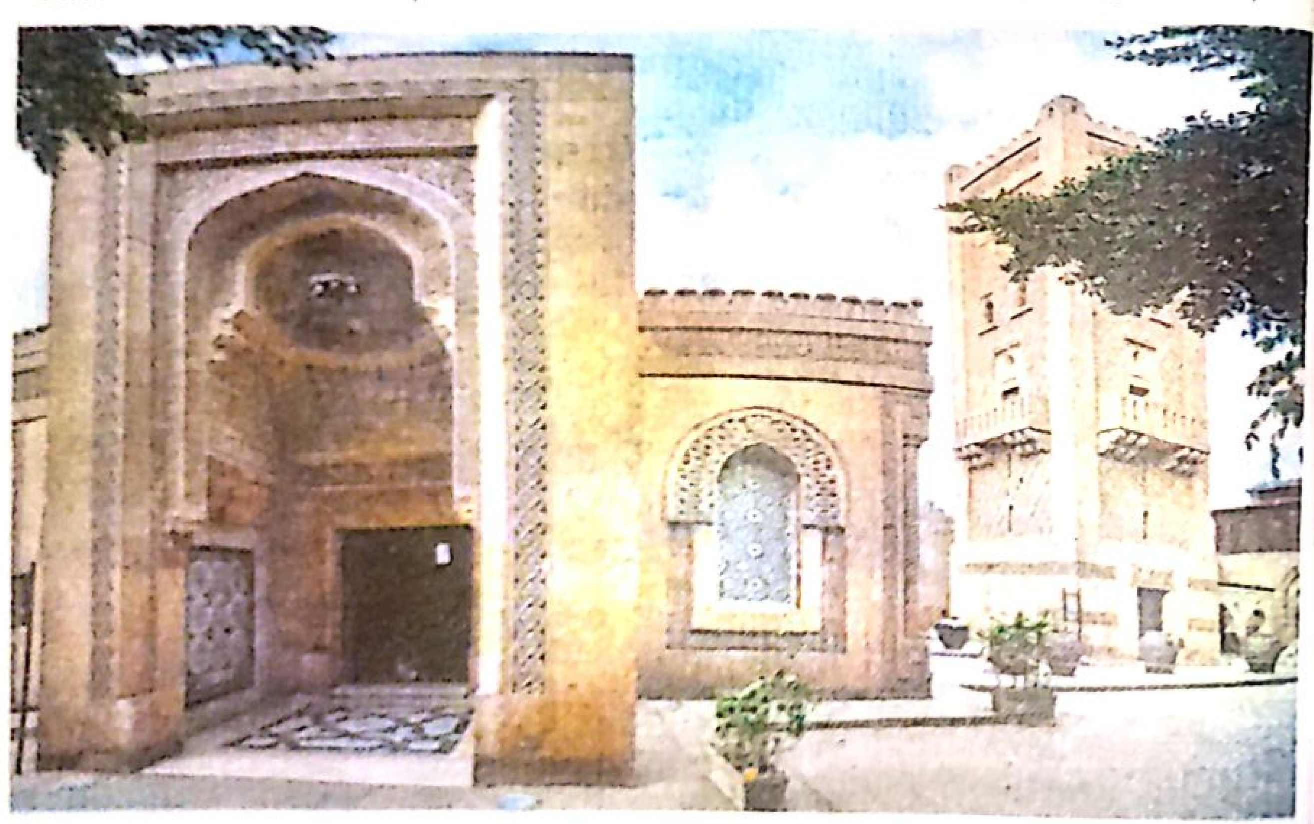
هيا بنا نتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة يوم الخميس. إنه صعب ولكن المنظر من أعلى جميل. إذا كنا هناك في وقت متأخر عصرًا، يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس فوق المدينة.

Samer : Cool! And in the morning, we can **explore the Souks**! They're near the Minaret.

رائع! وفي الصباح يمكننا استكشاف الأسواق! إنهم بالقرب من المئذنة.

Basel : Great! Cairo, here we come!

عظيم! أيتها القاهرة، ها نحن قادمون!



Did you know ?



When you see it from the air, the Nile Valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the Delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between **desert cliffs**, it is narrow.

عندما تراه من الجو، يكون وادي النيل على شكل مروحة. في الشمال، حيث ينفتح وادي النيل على الدلتا، يكون واسعًا. في الجنوب، حيث يمر وادي النيل بين منحدرات الصحراء، يكون ضيقًا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on ....
   a) Sunday b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Thursday
2. Climbing Bab Zuwayla minaret is ....
   a) difficult b) easy c) tiring d) boring
3. The view from the top is ....
   a) bad b) awful c) beautiful d) scary
4. In the late afternoon, we can watch the .... over the city.
   a) sunrise b) sunset c) midday d) midnight

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Let's go quad .... in the desert.
   a) riding b) swimming c) biking d) diving
2. Let's ride on a ....
   a) minaret b) rollercoaster c) river d) palace
3. On Sunday morning we can .... the Souks.
   a) explore b) dive c) swim d) ride
4. I'm really excited .... our vacation.
   a) on b) at c) in d) about
5. We can go to the museum .... Monday.
   a) at b) on c) [illegible] d) with
6. Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla ....
   a) minaret b) tree c) mountain d) tower

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

explore - travel - biking - Palace - photos

Basel and Samer are excited about their vacation this week. They can 1) .... to Cairo. They can visit the Manial 2) .... museum and take 3) .... They can go quad 4) .... in the desert in Giza.



Read the text and answer the questions.

Toka and Mariam are excited about their vacation this week. They think about trying some new places. They will visit the Manial Palace Museum on Monday and take photos for school project. Mariam wants to go quad biking in the desert in Giza on Tuesday. If they take the bus, they will arrive in about 30 minutes. Toka wants to climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. They will return home on Friday.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about Toka and Mariam's ....
   a) school b) home c) vacation d) prize
2. The opposite of the underlined word "difficult" is ....
   a) easy b) hard c) tiring d) comfortable
3. They will come back on ....
   a) Saturday b) Monday c) Sunday d) Friday

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When will Toka and Mariam visit the Manial Palace Museum? ....
5. What does Mariam want to do in the desert in Giza? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. things - in Cairo - There - to see - are - a lot of - .

   ....

2. biking - in the - go - Let's - desert - quad - .

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

- should we explore the Souks on monday?

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your vacation

Guiding elements:

(excited - Cairo - Museum - photos - theme park - quad biking)

Lesson (2) IF WE BOOK THE TOUR TODAY, IT'S CHEAPER

Vocabulary كلمات

website	موقع إلكتروني	credit card	بطاقة ائتمان	details	تفاصيل
dictionary	قاموس	tips	نصائح - إرشادات	freezer	فريزر (مُجمِّد)
loud	عالي الصوت	list	قائمة	adventure	مغامرة
trip	رحلة	proud	فخور	snack	وجبة خفيفة
guide	مرشد	properly	بطريقة سليمة	tour	جولة
company	شركة	helmet	خوذة	routine	روتين يومي
concentrate	يركز	remember	يتذكر	travel	يسافر
price	سعر	study	دراسة	stomachache	ألم في المعدة
social media			وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	discount	خصم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
miss	يفوته	missed	missed
block	يحجب	blocked	blocked
last	يدوم	lasted	lasted
check	يفحص	checked	checked
book	يحجز	booked	booked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
meet	يقابل	met	met
find	يجد	found	found
catch	يمسك - يلحق	caught	caught
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
pay	يدفع	paid	paid

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

pay for	يدفع (ثمن شئ)	miss the bus	يفوته الأتوبيس
a problem with	مشكلة في	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
write down	يدون	press the button	يضغط الزر
look up	يبحث عن معنى كلمة (في القاموس)	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Samer : Dad, here's the information I found online about quad biking in the desert.

أبي، هذه هي المعلومات التي وجدتها عبر الإنترنت حول ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء.

Dad : Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

أوه شكرًا سامر، أرني.

Samer : The company is called Desert Adventure. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look , the tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

الشركة اسمها مغامرة الصحراء. عندما ننظر إلى موقعهم الإلكتروني، نجد المعلومات هنا. انظر، المرشد السياحي سيقابلنا في الفندق.

Dad : Ok. What time will he meet us?

نعم. في أي وقت سيلتقي بنا؟

Samer : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

سيقابلنا في التاسعة صباحا وسيقودنا إلى الصحراء.

Dad : And what time do we get back?

وما هو الوقت الذي نعود فيه؟

Samer : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price. Should we take some water?

يجب أن نعود حوالي الساعة الثانية بعد الظهر. السعر يتضمن الغداء. هل يجب أن نأخذ بعض الماء؟

Dad : Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

نعم. فكره جيده. كم يبلغ حجم المجموعة؟

Samer : It'll be a group of six.

سوف تكون مجموعة من ستة.

Dad : I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

أنا أحب الصور. الجميع يرتدي الخوذات. هذا جيد. عليك أن ترتدي خوذة إذا كنت تركب دراجة رباعية. إلى متى نركب الدراجات الرباعية؟

Samer : One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

تستغرق إحدى الرحلات 45 دقيقة، ولكن هناك أيضا رحلة لمدة ساعة. هل يمكننا القيام بجولة الساعة يا أبي؟

Dad : Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions so that you stay safe.

نعم بالطبع. هذا سيكون ممتعا جدا. تذكر أن تستمع إلى تعليمات الدليل حتى تظل آمنا.

Samer : Yes, I will Dad.

نعم سأفعل يا أبي.

Dad : Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

جيد! كيف نحجز الجولة إذا لم نتمكن من حجزها على الموقع؟

Samer : We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

يمكننا حجزه في المكتب في المدينة. إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فسيكون أرخص. نحصل على خصم 10٪.

Dad : Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

عظيم. هل يمكنك أن تمرر لي محفظتي؟ أحتاج إلى بطاقة الائتمان الخاصة بي لدفع ثمن التذاكر. دعنا نذهب إلى المكتب الآن.

Samer : Sure Dad. Here you are. بالتأكيد يا أبي. تفضل.

Read and learn. استمع واقرأ.

Narrator 1

Hazem : Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working.

أمي، هناك مشكلة في المجمد. إنه لا يعمل.

Mom : The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the door properly.

الفريزر لا يعمل اذا لم تغلق الباب بشكل صحيح.

Narrator 2

Leila : Mrs Manal, can we use pencils in the test?

أستاذة منال، هل يمكننا استخدام أقلام الرصاص في الاختبار؟

Teacher : No sorry, you can't. Tell me now if you don't have a black pen.

لا آسف، لا يمكنك ذلك. أخبرني الآن إذا لم يكن لديك قلم أسود.

Narrator 3

Karim : What does this word mean, Sherif?

ماذا تعني هذه الكلمة يا شريف؟

Sherif : I don't know. If you don't know a word, look it up in a dictionary.

لا أعرف. إذا كنت لا تعرف كلمة ما، فابحث عنها في القاموس.

Narrator 4

Dad : Please turn the music down, Rana. It's too loud!

من فضلك اخفضي صوت الموسيقى يا رنا. إن صوتها عال جدا!

Rana : But Dad, I can't hear if it is too low.

لكن يا أبي، لا أستطيع أن أسمع إذا كان منخفضا جدا.

Narrator 5

Selim : What happens if you block a person on social media?

ماذا يحدث إذا قمت بحظر شخص ما على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي؟

Dalia : You don't get any messages from them. لا تتلقى أي رسائل منهم.

Read and learn. استمع واقرأ.

Hana	: Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6:30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do home work on Tuesday.
Youssef	: Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7:30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.
Maggie	: Hello. My name's Maggie. I get up every day at 6:30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.
Nader	: Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8:15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

Study Tips إرشادات المذاكرة



Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you **try** to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate

ذاكر لمدة حوالي ٣٠ دقيقة وليس أكثر. إذا حاولت المذاكرة لساعات بدون استراحة، فلن يمكنك التركيز.

When you **have** regular breaks, you **remember** more It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains **work** better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you're hungry. If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can concentrate better in the afternoon.

عندما يكون لديك فترات راحة منتظمة ، فأنت تتذكر أكثر. من الأفضل أيضا المذاكرة في نفس الوقت كل يوم، حتى يوم الجمعة والسبت. تعمل عقول البشر بشكل أفضل إذا كان لديهم روتين منتظم. أيضا ، لا تذاكر عندما تكون جوعانًا. إذا قمت بتناول وجبة صحية في وقت الغداء، فيمكنك التركيز بشكل أفضل وقت الظهيرة.

It's helpful if you **write** down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can **check** it off on the list when you **finish** studying and feel proud!

من المفيد أن تكتب قائمة بما تريد القيام به في كل مرة تذاكر فيها. ثم يمكنك التحقق من ذلك في القائمة عند الانتهاء من المذاكرة

Language Focus

"If" Zero Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the zero conditional to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية لـ (If) للتحدث عن حقائق أو أشياء عادة ما تكون حقيقية.

Form التكوين

If / When + present simple , present simple or can + inf.

لاحظ أننا نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين إذا بدأنا بـ If / When

- If / When we book the tour today, it's cheaper.
- If / When you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

Present simple or can + inf. + if / when + present simple

لاحظ أننا لا نضع فاصلة إذا جاءت "if / when" بين الجملتين

- The tablet switches off if / when you press this button.
- You can tell me if / when you need anything.

If / When + present simple , inf. ...... باقي الجملة + (مصدر الفعل)

يمكن أن تبدأ جملة جواب الشرط بفعل أمر (مصدر الفعل).

- If / When you need anything, please tell me.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

(Do / Does / Can) + subject + inf. + if / when + present simple?

- Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?
- Can you help me if you have enough time?

Wh- question

QW + (do / does / can) + subject + inf. + if / when + present simple?

- How can we book the tour if / when we don't book it on the website?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you heat ice, it ....
   a) melts b) melted c) would melt d) could melt
2. If you .... tired, you can go to bed early.
   a) feels b) felt c) feel d) had felt
3. When the clouds are red, it .... there's dust in the sky.
   a) meaning b) meant c) mean d) means
4. My English always gets better if I .... the lessons again at home.
   a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying
5. You can .... me if you need anything.
   a) told b) will tell c) tell d) telling

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The freezer doesn't work if you .... (not close) the door properly.
2. If I listen to music, it .... (help) me study.
3. If you put water in the freezer, it .... (freezing).
4. When you buy two T-shirts, you .... (gets) one free.
5. If you .... (tried) to study for hours, you can't concentrate.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. buy - two T-shirts, - you - free - get - one - When - you - .
   ....
2. don't water - Plants - if - die - you - them - .
   ....
3. press - you - this button, - turns on - the red light - If - .
   ....
4. too much cake - eat - a stomachache - I - if - I - get - .
   ....
5. sees a bee, - my cat - to catch - tries - it - When - she - .
   ....

- We use prepositions of time at, on and in, to say when something happens. نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (in , on , at) لنتحدث عن وقت حدوث شيء ما.

1 at

We use "at" with times. نستخدم "at" مع الأوقات.

e.g. I go to bed at 9 o'clock.

With these phrases. مع هذه العبارات.

at night ليلًا	at lunchtime في وقت الغداء	at eight o'clock في الساعة الثامنة
at midday في منتصف النهار	at noon في وقت الظهيرة	at midnight في منتصف الليل

2 on

We use "on" before days of the week. نستخدم "on" قبل أيام الأسبوع.

e.g. I'll go to the club on Friday.

Before specific dates. قبل التواريخ المحددة.

e.g. I'll travel to Cairo on September 28th.

With special days or occasions. مع أيام ومناسبات خاصة.

e.g. I'll get many presents on my birthday.

With these phrases. مع هذه العبارات.

on school days في أيام الدراسة	on the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
on time في الوقت المحدد	

3 in

We use "in" with seasons, months and years. نستخدم "in" مع فصول السنة والشهور والسنوات.

in August في شهر أغسطس	in summer في الصيف	in 2024 في عام ٢٠٢٤

e.g. In spring, I go to the parks.

With parts of the day. مع فترات اليوم.

in the morning في الصباح	in the afternoon في وقت الظهيرة
in the evening في المساء	

e.g. I have breakfast in the morning.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring
   a) at b) in c) on d) with
2. Let's meet outside the school .... 10:30 am
   a) at b) with c) on d) in
3. We had a science class .... Monday
   a) in b) at c) with d) on
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... July
   a) in b) with c) on d) at
5. Great news! I'm having a party .... my birthday!
   a) at b) over c) on d) in
6. What did you do .... the weekend?
   a) with b) in c) on d) off

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I get up .... (in) 7 o'clock
2. I play sports .... (at) Saturday
3. He was born .... (on) 2012
4. Let's meet .... (in) lunchtime
5. Our vacation starts .... (on) summer
6. When do you get up .... (in) school days?
7. I go to the library .... (on) 5 pm
8. The guide will meet them .... (at) the evening
9. I got many presents .... (in) my birthday
10. I was born .... (at) March

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana gets up every day at .... o'clock.
   a) six b) seven c) one d) three
2. She has breakfast with her ....
   a) friends b) cousins c) family d) children
3. She goes to the .... on Saturdays.
   a) museum b) library c) school d) court
4. She does her homework on ....
   a) Friday b) Monday c) Sunday d) Tuesday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We need our .... to pay for the ticket online.
   a) ticket b) passport c) credit card d) luggage
2. .... down what you want to do every day.
   a) Read b) Write c) Block d) Cut
3. She can't .... because she's very tired.
   a) pay b) happen c) concentrate d) rain
4. Lunch is included in the ....
   a) price b) prize c) breeze d) prise
5. You have to wear a .... if you ride a quad bike.
   a) dictionary b) helmet c) bike d) photo

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

homework - grandparents - lunch - sports - library

Youssef gets up every day at 7 o'clock. He has breakfast with his 1) .... at 7:30 in the morning. He doesn't go to the 2) .... , but he plays 3) .... on Sunday. He does his 4) .... on Thursday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are some study tips; study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you are hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunch time, you can work better in the afternoon.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about .... tips
   a) study b) sleep c) sport d) trip
2. Don't study when you are ....
   a) angry b) hungry c) awake d) ready
3. The opposite of the underlined word "healthy" is ....
   a) unhealthy b) unkind c) unhappy d) unclean

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What will happen if you study for a long time without a break? ....
5. Mention two tips for studying. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. did - you - What - weekend - do - the - on - ?

....

2. spring - Sham El-Nessim - in - We - celebrate - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. If you heat ice, it .... (melt)
2. If you .... (not water) plants, they die

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Your routine

(get up - breakfast - family - library - play sports)

Lesson (3) Part (A)

FATIMA FACES HER FEAR

Vocabulary الكلمات

excited	متحمس - سعيد	sunset	غروب الشمس	typical	نمطي
famous	مشهور	incredible	لا يُصدق	teenage	سن المراهقة
secret	سر	scared	خائف	monument	أثر (قديم)
disappoint	يُحبط - يخيب أمل	fear	خوف	background	خلفية
dome	قبة	heights	مرتفعات	hill	تل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
reach	يصل	reached	reached
lift	يرفع	lifted	lifted
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
face	يواجه	faced	faced
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	breathed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
say	يقول	said	said
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
meet	يقابل	met	met
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

climb up to the top	يصعد إلى القمة	at that moment	في هذه اللحظة
afraid of	خائف من	sure about	متأكد من
in the afternoon	بعد الظهر	at the end of	في نهاية
look around you	انظر حولك	typical day	يوم نمطي

Fatima faces her fear

فاطيما تواجه خوفها

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

تأتي أمل ابنة عم فاطيما المفضلة لزيارتها. إنها المرة الأولى لأمل في أسوان. إنها متحمسة جدًا وتريد أن ترى كل الأماكن المشهورة.



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it - there's a great view from there!".

تعرض أمل صورة على فاطيما، وتقول "هل يمكننا الذهاب لزيارة قبة أبو الهوى؟ يمكننا صعود التل للوصول إليها - يوجد منظر رائع من هناك!".



Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a **secret**: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the **dome**?

لا تعرف فاطيما ماذا تقول. إنها تريد أن تجعل أمل سعيدة، لكن لديها سر: إنها تخاف من المرتفعات. كيف يمكنها تسلق التل للوصول للقبة؟

Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to **face her fear**. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

لا تريد فاطيما أن تخيب أمل ابنة عمها، لذلك قررت مواجهة خوفها. تقول:" هذه فكرة جيدة ، لنذهب يوم الثلاثاء بعد الظهر. يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس."



It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "**Breathe** slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

إنه يوم الثلاثاء والفتيات عند قبة أبو الهوى. بعد تسلق طويل ، وصلوا للقمة. وجه فاطيما شاحب. إنها خائفة جدًا. لكن تأخذ أمل يدها وتبتسم وتقول: "تنفسي ببطء. يمكنك أن تفعلي هذا ، يا فاطيما. والآن انظري حولك."



Fatima feels **calmer**. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

تشعر فاطيما بالهدوء. ترفع رأسها لتنظر إلى المنظر. إنه أمر لا يصدق. وفجأة لم تعد تشعر بالخوف. إنها تشعر بالفخر للعيش في مثل هذا المكان الرائع!

Tip!

Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra detail. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

يمكن أن تساعدنا الصور على فهم موضوع القصة وتعطي تفاصيل أكثر. على سبيل المثال، يمكننا أن نعرف مكان الحدث من الخلفية. يمكن أن تخبرك وجوه الشخصيات بشعورهم في هذه اللحظة.

Lesson (3) Part (B)

LITTLE DEER IN THE FOREST

Vocabulary كلمات

deer	غزال	puddle	بركة ماء	fox	ثعلب
wolf	ذئب	thirsty	عطشان	bear	دب
forest	غابة	river	نهر	brave	شجاع
lake	بحيرة	stream	مجرى مائي	afraid	خائف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
sparkle	يتلألأ	sparkled	sparkled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

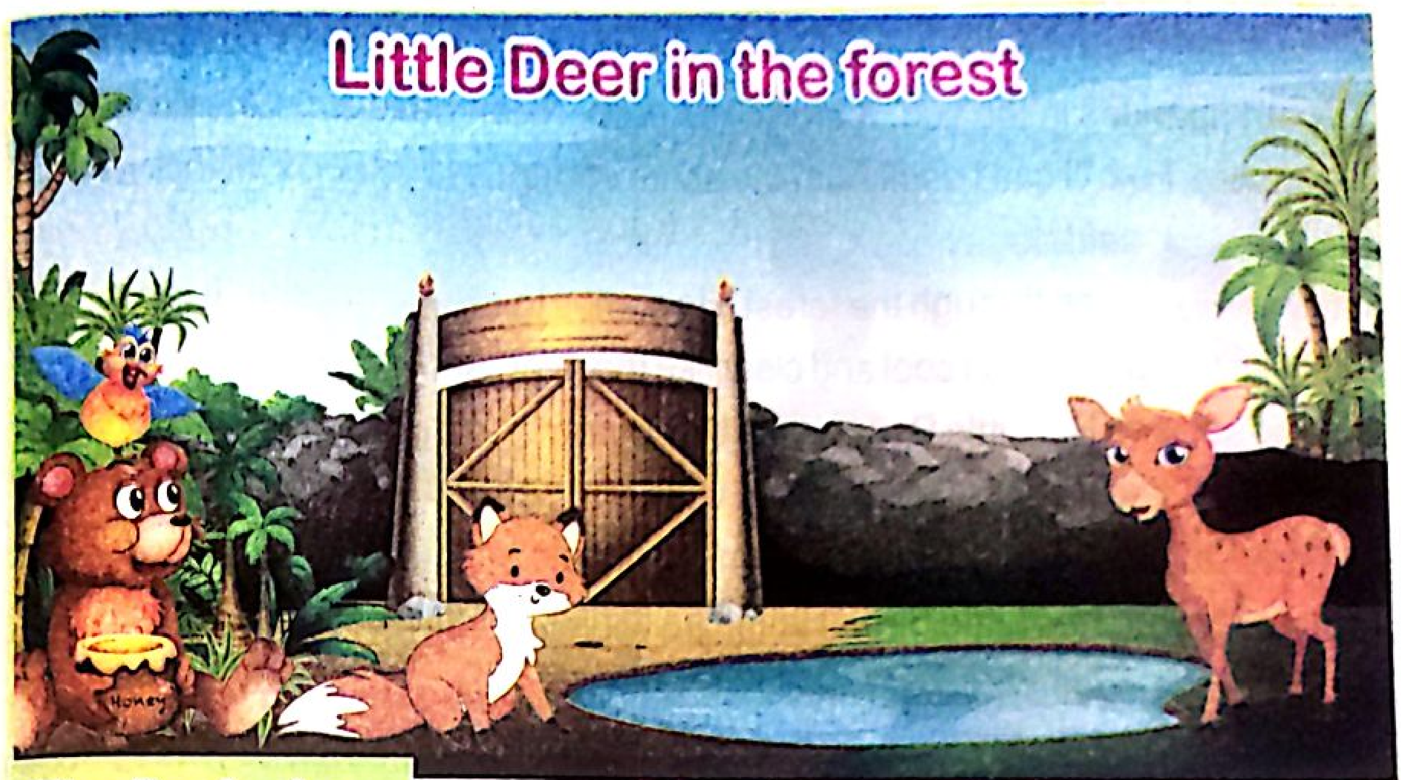
Present		Past	P.P
run	يجري	ran	run
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
come	يأتي	came	come
think	يفكر	thought	thought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

run through	يجري عبر	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
the same as	نفس الشيء مثل	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة
sparkle in the sun	يتلألأ في الشمس	go back to	يرجع إلى

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



The Beginning:

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

الغزال الصغير يجري عبر الغابة. يصل إلى بحيرة جميلة زرقاء ويقرر أن يتوقف لشرب الماء. وعندئذٍ يرى ذئبًا. الذئب يشرب من البحيرة.

يقول الغزال الصغير "أوه لا! لا أستطيع الشرب من نفس البحيرة كالذئب. الذئب يريد أن يأكلني!"

يجري الغزال الصغير عبر الغابة. وبعد ذلك يصل إلى نهر. النهر بارد وصافي. ولكن عندما يذهب الغزال الصغير للشرب منه، يرى دبًا. الدب يشرب من النهر. يقول الغزال الصغير أوه لا أستطع الشرب من نفس النهر كالدب. الدب يريد أن يأكلني.

The Middle:

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream. The stream sparkles in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

يجري الغزال الصغير عبر الغابة. يصل إلى نهر صغير. يتلألأ النهر الصغير في الشمس. ويقول "أخيرا! يمكنني تناول ....أوه لا!" يرى الغزال الصغير ثعلبا. "لا يمكنني الشرب من نفس النهر كالثعلب. الثعلب يريد أن يأكلني!"

يجري الغزال الصغير عبر الغابة. يصل إلى بركة كبيرة. إنها ليست زرقاء مثل البحيرة. إنها ليست باردة وصافية مثل النهر. كما أنها لا تتلألأ مثل النهر الصغير. ولكن الغزال الصغير عطشان جدًا الآن!

عندئذٍ، يرى الغزال الصغير عصفورة صغيرة. ترى العصفورة الصغيرة الغزال الصغير أيضًا ولكنها ليست خائفة. تشرب العصفورة الصغيرة من بركة الماء.

يراقب الغزال الصغير العصفورة الصغيرة. ثم يفكر قائلًا "إذا كانت العصفورة الصغيرة شجاعة، فيمكنني أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا".

The End:

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious! Little Deer feels happy and proud.

يرجع الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة الجميلة الزرقاء. يرى الذئب والدب والثعلب. ولكن هذه المرة يذهب الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة ويشرب. إنه لذيذ! يشعر الغزال الصغير بالسعادة والفخر.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where does Little Deer run?

....

2. Why does Little Deer go to the lake?

....

3. Was the water in the lake delicious?

....



PRONUNCIATION

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر مع وردد.





Listen and repeat:

1. The white wolf went for a walk with a woman wearing a watch.
2. I visited a very old village and bought a very nice violin.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fatima is Amal's ....
   a) sister b) grandma c) cousin d) mother
2. It's Amal's first time in ....
   a) Aswan b) Giza c) Cairo d) Luxor
3. Amal is very .... She wants to see all the famous places.
   a) sad b) kind c) unhappy d) excited
4. They visited the .... of Abu-Al Hawa and climbed to the top.
   a) museum b) restaurant c) Dome d) mountain

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can .... up to the top of the dome.
   a) climb b) swim c) dive d) sleep
2. She is afraid .... heights.
   a) on b) at c) of d) off
3. Fatima decides to .... her fear.
   a) stay b) face c) buy d) take
4. We can watch the .... in the evening.
   a) sunset b) sunrise c) sunburn d) sunshine
5. A crocodile swims in a ....
   a) mountain b) lake c) sky d) cave
6. Ice cream is .... It's very nice.
   a) delicious b) bad c) terrible d) bitter
7. A deer lives in the ....
   a) sky b) air c) forest d) bedroom
8. Little Deer comes to the .... to drink water.
   a) mountain b) sky c) air d) river
9. Ali feels .... He has the top marks.
   a) proud b) sad c) angry d) bad
10. Little Deer is .... He isn't afraid of Bear.
   a) shy b) brave c) bad d) scared

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her in Aswan. Amal is excited to see all the famous places in Aswan. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al- Hawa. Fatima has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She can't climb the hill up to the dome, but she doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. They go to the Dome and reach the top.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amal is a Fatima's ....
   a) cousin b) sister c) friend d) mother
2. The underlined word "afraid" means ....
   a) happy b) sad c) scared d) kind
3. Fatima is afraid of ....
   a) crocodiles b) insects c) dogs d) heights

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where is the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? ....
5. What is Fatima's secret? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. happy - to - She - make - Amal - wants - .

....

2. know - what - Fatima - doesn't - to say - .

....

3. visit - to - Fatima - comes - Who - ?

....

4. runs - through - Little Deer - forest - the - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

Guiding elements:

(Aswan - high - view - tourists)

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary الكلمات

blog post	مدونة - تدوينة	brave	شجاع	date	تاريخ
title	عنوان	section	قسم	personal	شخصي
carnival	كرنفال - احتفال	blogger	مدون	experiences	تجارب
simulation theater	مسرح المحاكاة	a bit scary	مرعب قليلا	attractive	جذاب
double room	حجرة مزدوجة	effects	مؤثرات	destination	وجهة السفر
square	ميدان	fantasy	خيال	surprise	مفاجأة
Orient Train	قطار الشرق	realistic	واقعي	present	هدية
store	محل / متجر	ocean	محيط	brochure	كتيب - كراسة دعاية
waterfalls	شلالات	monastery	دير		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
include	يشتمل على	included	included
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
tell	يخبر	told	told
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
ride	يركب	rode	ridden

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

arrive at the park	يصل المتنزه	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
sounds like	يبدو مثل	do research	يقوم بعمل بحث
get wet	يبتل	ride the rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهي

Help your child identify these words.

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Nashwa's blog

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Tuesday June 3rd

الثلاثاء 3 يونيو

All the fun of the Carnival!

كل متعة الكرنفال!

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

اليوم هو عيد ميلادي وخمنوا أين أنا؟ أنا مع عائلتي في مفاجأة عيد ميلادي المميز في الكرنفال! أريد أن أخبركم كل شيء عن ذلك.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

عندما تصلون إلى الحديقة، تكونوا فجأة في عالم من الخيال - إنه أمر مثير حقًا. هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا. هناك ألعاب ملاهي مذهلة لتركبها مثل قطارات الملاهي (إذا كنت شجاعًا!)، ومسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. هناك أماكن لتناول الطعام والمتاجر أيضًا.

The children's section has nine rides including the Orient Train. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock - My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

يحتوي قسم الأطفال على تسع ألعاب بما في ذلك قطار الشرق. لدينا تذاكر لذلك في الساعة العاشرة - أخي يحب ألعاب ركوب المياه، لذلك يريد أن يركب بعضًا منها في وقت لاحق هذا الصباح. في الساعة الحادية عشرة والنصف لدينا تذاكر لركوب الشلالات. يوجد بها بعض الأقسام العالية لذلك هي مخيفة بعض الشيء، وتبتل بالماء كثيرًا!

In the afternoon Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world - snowy mountains, even under the ocean.



في فترة ما بعد الظهر نريد أنا وأبي الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة. تجلس في مقعدك مع شاشات كبيرة من حولك، وهناك مؤثرات صوتية وضوئية، وتشعر وكأنك في أماكن مختلفة حول العالم - الجبال الثلجية وحتى تحت المحيط.

It's very realistic - I can't wait! What a great birthday present - thanks Mom and Dad!

إنه واقعي للغاية - لا أستطيع الانتظار! يا لها من هدية عيد ميلاد رائعة - شكرًا لأمي وأبي!

Writing a blog post كتابة مدونة

Tip!

1- A blog post should have a title and date. ١- يجب أن يكون للمدونة عنوان وتاريخ.

2- You should use informal language. ٢- يجب أن تستخدم لغة غير رسمية.

3- You should use the first person pronouns (I, my, me).

٣- يجب أن نستخدم ضمائر المتكلم.

4- The blog has to include a personal story. ٤- يجب أن تتضمن المدونة قصة شخصية.

5- It usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about their experiences.

٥- عادة ما تعرض المدونة آراء ومشاعر الكاتب حول تجاربه.

6- Bloggers often add photos to make their blogs more attractive.

٦- غالبًا ما يضيف المدونون صورًا لجعل مدوناتهم أكثر جاذبية.



Remember:

1- Write about something you like and enjoy. اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions "I'm, It's) and adjectives like "awesome" and "cool".

اكتب لقراءك كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات "It's, I'm" وصفات مثل "awesome" و "cool"

3- Use exclamation points "!" and emojis. استخدم علامات التعجب "!" ورموز تعبيرية.

4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

أعط رأيك وادعو قراءك ليعطو آرائهم.

5- Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد من أن الهجاء صحيح.

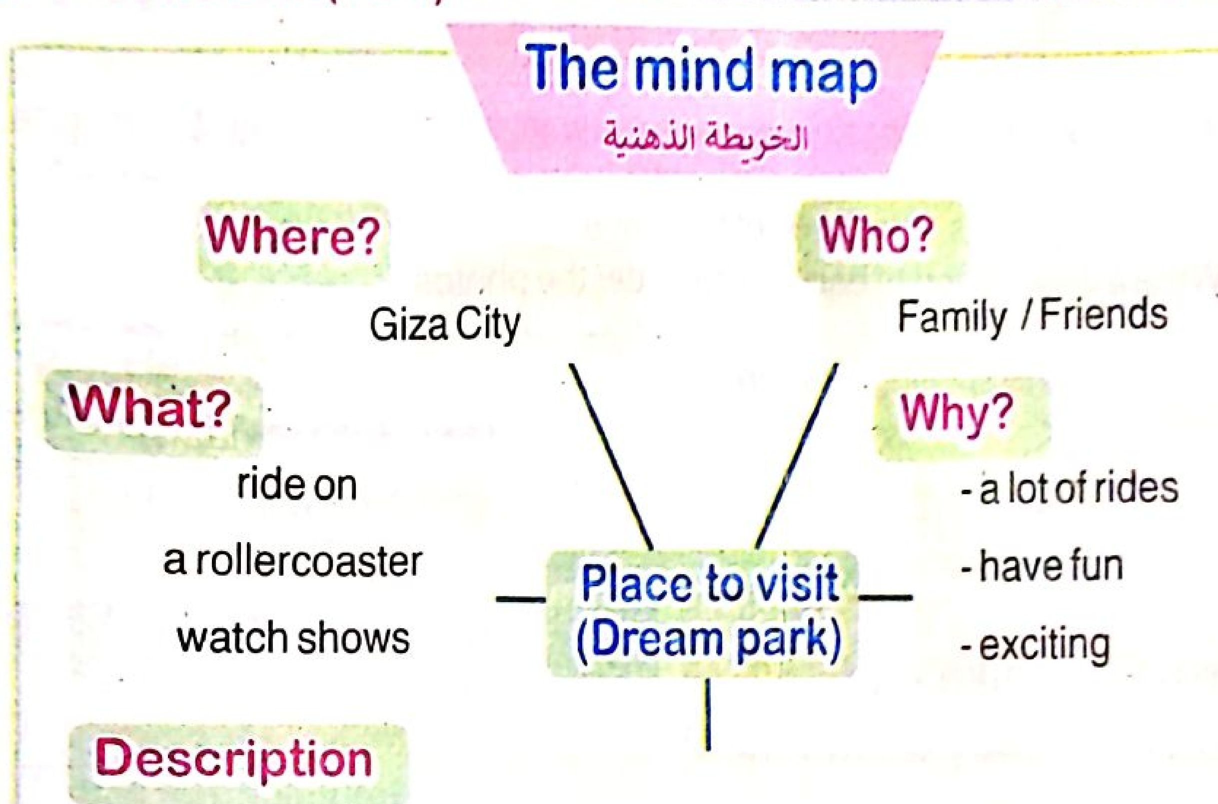
- To write a blog post about a place you like visiting, you can include these ideas. لكي تكتب تدوينة عن مكان تحب زيارته يمكنك أن تتضمن هذه الأفكار.

Where is the place?
Why do you like it?
Who is with you?
What adjectives do you think describe it?
What can you do there?

Help your child learn How to write a blog post.

The mind map

الخريطة الذهنية



Description

There are rollercoasters and theaters. There are restaurants to eat and stores, too. The children's section has nine rides including the Orient Train.

Your Turn

Write a blog post about a place you visit.
Your name is Mariam.

....	Blog Home	About me	Links	Archive

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

How to make a tourist brochure

كيفية عمل منشور سياحي

1- Write a short introduction of the place you want to include in your brochure.

اكتب مقدمة قصيرة عن المكان الذي تريد أن يتضمنه الكتيب.

2- Find some photos or pictures of the place.
- Write a description of each place under the photos.

اختر بعض الصور للمكان واكتب وصف كل مكان أسفل الصور.

3- Check that the spelling, grammar, and punctuation is correct.

تأكد من صحة الهجاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم.

A tourist brochure

كتيب سياحي

Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination!

شرم الشيخ - وجهة رائعة لقضاء عطلة

For only LE 1,000 per night, per person in a double room.

فقط ١٠٠٠ جنيه الليلة للفرد في حجرة مزدوجة

Sharm el-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do.

شرم الشيخ مدينة مثيرة للاهتمام ومزدحمة في مصر على البحر الأحمر. هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكن رؤيتها والقيام بها



- swim in the sea — نسبح في البحر
- relax at the beach — نسترخي على الشاطئ



- go quad biking in the desert

نركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء



- visit St Catherine's monastery

نزور دير سانت كاترين



- eat good food — نأكل الطعام الجيد

Take *Let's Ride!* bus from Gi[...] Square every afternoon at 3 pm f[...] LE 500 only!

خذ أتوبيس "هيا نركب!" من ميدان الجيزة بعد الظهر في [...]ة الثالثة فقط بـ 500 جنيها

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... is Ahmed's birthday.
   a) Yesterday b) Today c) Tomorrow d) Now
2. He is .... years old.
   a) ten b) eight c) twelve d) eleven
3. He is with his family in ....
   a) Giza b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Cairo
4. They are buying a .... for him.
   a) present b) book c) car d) mobile

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I bought a .... for Hani on his birthday.
   a) present b) palm c) theater d) rollercoaster
2. We go to the .... to watch shows.
   a) store b) theater c) park d) zoo
3. We arrived .... the park early.
   a) for b) on c) under d) at
4. He is going to .... on the rollercoaster.
   a) fly b) swim c) ride d) dive
5. We buy ice cream at the ....
   a) pool b) store c) tree d) cave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fantasy - rollercoaster - matches - carnival - family

Today is my birthday. I'm with my 1) .... for my special birthday surprise at the 2) .... When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of 3) .... It's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the 4) .... , and theaters where you can watch shows.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. with - at - I'm - Carnival - my family - the - .

....

2. rides - section - has - nine - The children's - .

....

3. to - the - theater - want - go to - I - simulation - .

....

4. town - Egypt - Sharm El-Sheikh - an interesting - is - in - .

....

5 Write a blog post about FIFTY (50). Your name is Hani.

Guiding elements:

(Sharm El-Sheikh - quad biking - St Catherine's monastery)

....	Blog Home	About me	Links	Archive

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

Writing Corner

My vacation

I'm excited about my vacation. I'm going to travel to Cairo. I can visit the museum on Sunday. On Monday, I can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum. I can go quad biking in the desert. On Wednesday, I can climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret and watch the sunset over the city. I can also explore the Souks. They are near the minaret.

Study tips

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you try to study for hours, you can't concentrate. When you take regular breaks, you remember more. It is better to study at the same time each day. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study.

Sharm El-Sheikh

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do. You can swim in the sea. You can relax on the beach. You can go quad biking in the desert. You can also visit ST Catherine's monastery.

A place you would like to visit

The Carnival is my favorite place. It is a fantastic place. I go there with my family. I ride on the rollercoaster. I watch shows and concerts in the theater. There are places to eat and stores too. The children's section has nine rides including the Orient Train.

Review on Unit (3)

Vocabulary

go quad biking	يركب الدراجات الرباعية	museum	متحف
Bab Zuwayla minaret	مئذنة باب زويلة	dome	قبة
ride on a rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهي	lake	بحيرة
explore the Souks	يستكشف الأسواق	stream	جدول مائي
the Manial Palace Museum	متحف قصر المنيل	puddle	بركة من المياه
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	destination	وجهة مقصودة
simulation theater	مسرح المحاكاة	Carnival	كرنفال

Pronunciation

/v/		/w/	
volcano	بركان	water	ماء
vegetables	خضروات	wolf	ذئب
violin	آلة الكمان	window	نافذة
vase	مزهرية (زهرية)	whale	حوت

Language

If Conditional إذا (لو) الشرطية

Zero conditional (for facts) الحالة الصفرية (للتعبير عن حقائق)

If / When + present simple → present simple / can + inf.

- If you heat ice, it melts.
- If you press this button, the tablet switches off.
- When you book online, you can also choose which seats you want.
- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?.

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

- at midnight - at eight o'clock - at lunchtime
- on Friday - on my birthday - on August 17th
- in August - in summer - in 2023

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

متحف	....	ركوب الدراجة الرباعية	....
مئذنة	....	عطلة	....
قطار الملاهي	....	يستكشف	....

Lesson (2)

صيف	....	يحجز	....
استراحة	....	ارشادات	....

Lesson (3)

ثعلب	....	خائف	....
متحمس	....	مرتفعات	....
شجاع	....	فخور	....
مشهور	....	غابة	....
منظر	....	جدول مائي	....
غزال	....	نهر	....
ذئب	....	بركة من المياه	....
دب	....	خلفية	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

مدونة	....	مسرح المحاكاة	....
كرنفال - احتفال	....	خيال	....
وجهة سفر	....	محل	....
صحراء	....	شلال	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ahmed is in the carnival with his ....
   a) sister   b) cousin   c) brother   d) friends
2. Ali rides the ....
   a) rollercoaster   b) bike   c) bus   d) taxi
3. Adam watches .... in the theater.
   a) films   b) movies   c) shows   d) plays
4. They are very ....
   a) sad   b) unhappy   c) unkind   d) happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can go quad .... in the desert.
   a) swimming   b) biking   c) diving   d) flying
2. She is afraid of heights, but she tries to face her ....
   a) fear   b) secret   c) vacation   d) view
3. He's .... He isn't afraid of dogs.
   a) scared   b) frightened   c) brave   d) scary
4. Animals go to the .... to drink water.
   a) tree   b) river   c) mountain   d) sky

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wolf - rides - forest - drink - lake

There is a little Deer. The little Deer runs through the 1) ....
He comes to a beautiful, blue 2) .... He decided to stop for a 3) .... of water. He sees a 4) .... The wolf wants to eat him

Help your child deal with such questions.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up to the top - there's a great view from there!" Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. It's Amal's first time in ....
   a) London b) Paris c) Giza d) Aswan
2. Amal is .... to be in Aswan.
   a) angry b) excited c) sad d) tired
3. The opposite of the underlined word "top" is ....
   a) bottom b) next c) up d) high

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "her" refer to? ....
5. What is Fatima afraid of? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. over - the sunset - can - the city - We - watch - .

....

2. to - Amal - She - make - wants - happy - .

....

3. our - excited - I'm - vacation - about - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

4. If you press this button, the tablet .... (switch) off.
5. I get up .... (in) six o'clock.

7 Punctuate the following.

- i m very clever. ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Your vacation

(Cairo - take photos)

1 Read and complete the following dialog with:

minaret - new - excited - feel - biking

Mariam : Is it your first time in Cairo?
Malak : Yes, it is. I want to visit 1) .... places.
Mariam : How do you 2) ....?
Malak : I'm very 3) ....
Mariam : What places do you want to visit first?
Malak : I want to visit the Bab Zuwayla 4) .... and go quad 5) .... in the desert.



Read and complete the following dialog with:

What - concentrate - healthy - breaks - tips

Ahmed : Why are you worried?
Ali : I have a test, but I can't 1) ....
Ahmed : Ok. I can give you some study 2) ....
Ali : 3) .... should I do?
Ahmed : You should have regular 4) ....
Ali : What else can I do?
Ahmed : You should have 5) .... meals.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1. minaret museum take souks (..............)
2. visited climb explored planned (..............)
3. under in on Saturday (..............)
4. puddle fear river lake (..............)
5. park museum theater climb (..............)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1. visit palace desert theme park (..............)
2. travel block book remembered (..............)
3. ran drank came think (..............)
4. wolf fantasy elephant deer (..............)
5. bus trip bike train (..............)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Listen and read.

Narrator 1

Dad	:	Is this your friend who lives in Zamalek?
Sherifa	:	Oh, do you mean Dalia?
Dad	:	The one who's very helpful and good at math.
Sherifa	:	Yes, that's Dalia. She's very funny too.
Dad	:	Where are you in the photo?
Sherifa	:	On a school trip to the Egyptian Museum. That was a great day!

Narrator: 2 (mobile phone rings)

Malak	:	Hi Dina. Do you want to go to the club on Saturday?
Dina	:	Hi Malak. Saturday? I usually go see my grandparents on Saturday.
Malak	:	Do you go every week?
Dina	:	Yes, my parents like to go every week. My grandma isn't very well you see.
Malak	:	Oh. Well, what about after school one afternoon? We can make a cake!
Dina	:	Yes, good idea. I'll ask my mom this evening.
Malak	:	Ok, see you at school. Bye!

Narrator 3

Nesma : Close the fridge, Tarek!

Tarek : Why?

Nesma : Because the ice melts if it's too warm.

Tarek : Oh. Why?

Nesma : Because the ice becomes water when it gets warm.

Tarek : Oh. Why?

Nesma : Let's get some ice and I can show you..

Listen and read.

Narrator 1

Narrator 2 : You should drink more water.

Narrator 2

Narrator 2 : Open the window, please!

Narrator 3

Narrator 2 : My granddad grows vegetables.

Narrator 4

Narrator 2 : I'll put the flowers in a vase.

Narrator 5

Narrator 2 : Look, there's a picture of a wolf in this book.

Activities (1) on Review (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dalia has a .... who lives in Zamalek.
   a) cousin b) sister c) brother d) friend
2. Dalia's friend is very .... and funny.
   a) helpful b) shy c) impolite d) nervous
3. They went on a school trip to the Egyptian ....
   a) Store b) Market c) Museum d) Minaret
4. They took many ....
   a) foods b) photos c) flowers d) fruits

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We have the science lesson in the ....
   a) playground b) bathroom c) garden d) laboratory
2. I always eat fruit that is natural and organic with no ....
   a) chemicals b) water c) taste d) delicious
3. The .... giant doesn't want to share his garden.
   a) happy b) selfish c) helpful d) kind
4. You can go .... biking in the desert.
   a) swim b) quad c) cycling d) quick

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vacation - Cairo - sunset - beautiful - minaret

I am excited about my vacation. There are lots of things to do in 1) .... Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla 2) .... It's difficult, but the view from the top is 3) .... If we are in the late afternoon, we can watch the 4) .... over the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yara Nader is a student in Luxor Primary School. She likes English and art, but she isn't good at maths. After school, she helps her mother. In the evening, she does her homework and studies her lessons. Her father is a doctor. Yara has got a sister and two brothers. Their names are Noha, Nabil and Ali. Noha is a secretary. Nabil is a tour guide and he likes his job very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Yara is .... at maths.
   a) good   b) bad   c) clever   d) not bad
2. Yara's father works in a/an ....
   a) office   b) school   c) hospital   d) garage
3. Noha is Yara's ....
   a) cousin   b) sister   c) mom   d) friend

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is Noha's job? ....
5. How many people are there in Yara's family? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a good - to make - place - new friends - The garden - is - .

....

2. sad, - I - When - feel - my cat - with - play - I - .

....

3. to - my family - I - Hurghada - with - went - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My favorite TV show is always .... (in) Sunday.
2. My sister is clever, she .... (never) gets full marks in her tests.

7 Punctuate the following.

- where is the playground ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: A trip to Alexandria

(Last week - enjoyed)

Activities (2) on Review (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mini Forest is a/an ....

a) organization b) park c) zoo d) block

2. It plants small areas of trees in the .... of our cities.

a) middle b) beginning c) end d) top

3. These special green areas help our ....

a) animals b) fruits c) wildlife d) trees

4. At Mini Forest people work hard to find the best urban ..... for their forests

a) locations b) tables c) roots d) fruit

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We play basketball in the ....

a) laboratory b) fountain c) pool d) gymnasium

2. You can open the ...., it's very hot.

a) window b) watch c) wolf d) west

3. He is .... He is worried about talking to people.

a) messy b) shy c) nervous d) organized

4. Cats have .... claws and teeth.

a) blunt b) strong c) sharp d) bad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

idea - grandparents - well - school - club

Malak and Dina are friends. Malak wants to go to the 1) .... on Saturday to do sports. But Dina usually goes to see her 2) .... on Saturday. Her grandma isn't very 3) .... Malak suggests going to the club after 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Nour. I am in grade six. Last week, I had a school trip to Cairo. I was so excited to try new places with my friends. We visited the Manial Palace Museum. It was amazing and I took many photos for my school project. Then, we went quad biking in the desert. We really had fun. After that, we tried to climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret. At first, it was difficult because I am afraid of heights. However, my friends helped me and I decided to face my fears not to disappoint them. When I reached the top, the view was incredible and I was calmer.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. I took many photos for my school ....
   a) bus   b) uniform   c) magazine   d) project
2. They went quad biking in the ....
   a) desert   b) park   c) forest   d) museum
3. The underlined word " incredible" means ....
   a) bad   b) ugly   c) fantastic   d) delicious

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why was it difficult for Nour to climb the minaret? ....
5. When did Nour and his friends go to Cairo? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - you - want - Do - to - come - my house - ?

....

2. claws - sharp - Cats - teeth - have - and - .

....

3. to - want - go - I - the simulation - theatre - to - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets

1. If he .... (press) the button, the machine works.
2. My birthday party was .... (excited).

7 Punctuate the following.

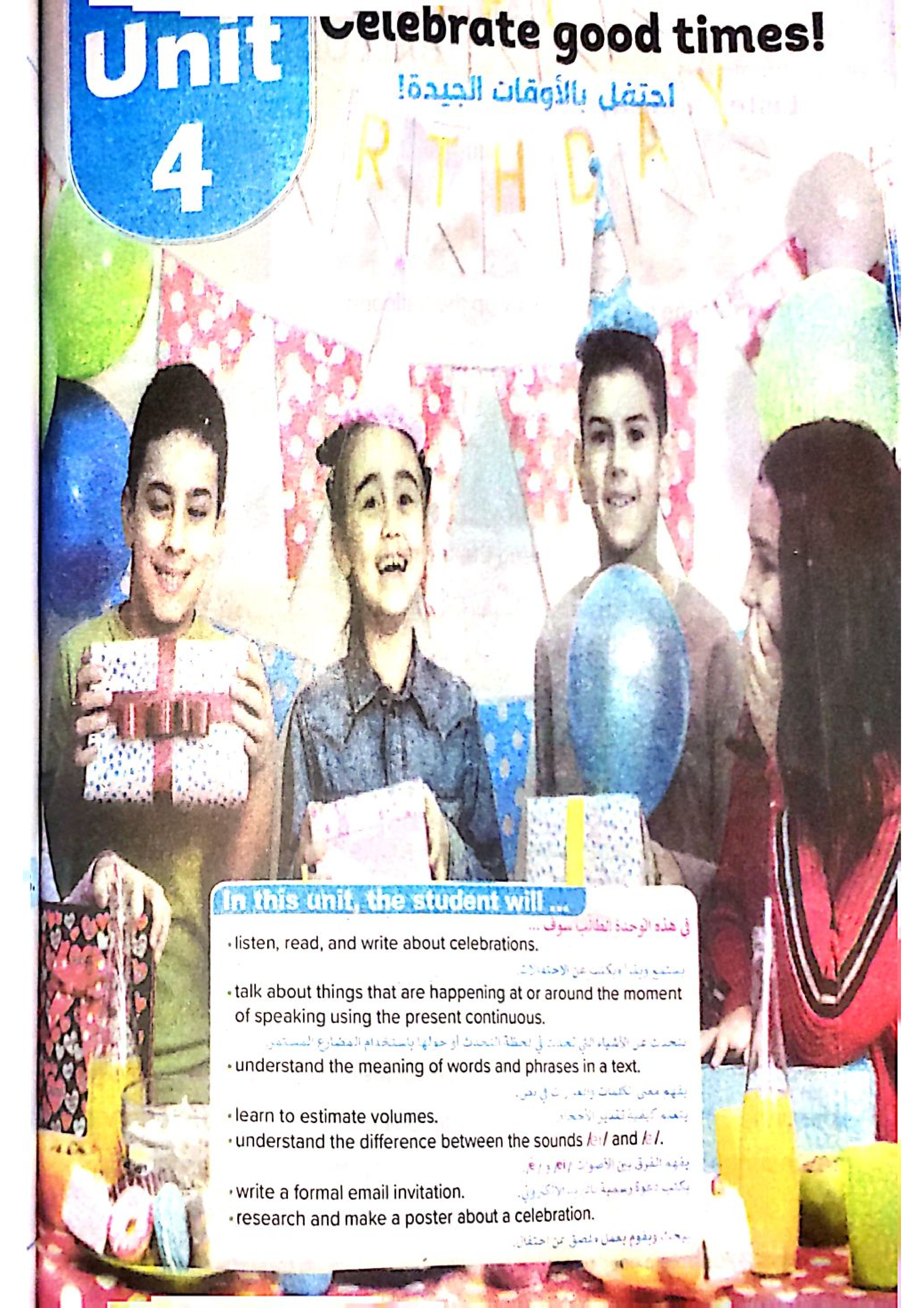
- i like eating dates every morning ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Amazing holiday destination

Guiding elements:

(Sharm El-Sheikh - quad biking)


Unit 4
Celebrate good times!
احتفل بالأوقات الجيدة!
In this unit, the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...
• listen, read, and write about celebrations.
• talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.
• understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
• learn to estimate volumes.
• understand the difference between the sounds /eɪ/ and /e/.
• write a formal email invitation.
• research and make a poster about a celebration.

Lesson (1) CAN YOU BLOW UP SOME BALLOONS?

Listen and say. استمع وقُل.



decorate the cake

يزين (التورتة / الكعكة)



blow up the balloons

تنفخ البالونات



let off the fireworks

يطلق الألعاب النارية



hang up the streamers

يعلق أشرطة الزينة



send the invitations

يرسل الدعوات



make a playlist

يقوم بعمل قائمة أغاني

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

party	حفلة	adult	شخص بالغ	yard	فناء / حديقة
string	خيط	dark	مظلم	event	حدث - مناسبة
scissors	مقص	everyone	الجميع - الكل	candle	شمعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
pass	يمرر / يناول	passed	passed
tie	يربط	tied	tied
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	celebrated
decorate	يزين	decorated	decorated
represent	يرمز إلى	represented	represented
ask	يطلب - يسأل	asked	asked

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
write	يكتب wrote	written
let off	يطلق let off	let off
cut	يقطع cut	cut
send	يرسل sent	sent
make	يصنع made	made
find	يجد found	found
choose	يختار chose	chosen
hang up	يعلق hung up	hung up
blow up	ينفخ blew up	blown up

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

pass the scissors	يناول المقص	Good idea.	فكرة رائعة.
I'm not sure.	لست متأكدا.	have to	يضطر إلى
let me know	أخبرني / دعني أعرفا	really great	رائع حقًا
tie the streamers together	يربط الأشرطة مع بعضها	cut the string	يقص الخيط
RSVP = let me know	برجاء الرد	get dark	يصبح الجو مظلما



Definition تعريف

An invitation is like a letter asking to come to a party or event. الدعوة

Did you know ?

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person.



في الصين ، يأكل الناس الشعرية (نودلز) في أعياد ميلادهم. الشعرية طويلة جدًا لترمز إلى حياة طويلة للشخص.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Who is the birthday party for? لمن حفلة عيد الميلاد؟

Hani : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?
مرحبًا يوسف، ماذا تفعل؟

Youssef : Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?
مرحبًا هاني. أنا أعلق أشرطة الزينة لحفلة أختي نسمة. هل يمكنك مساعدتي؟

Hani : Sure. What can I do, cousin?
بالتأكيد. ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل يا ابن عمي؟

Youssef : Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up, too.
هلا ناولتني المقص، من فضلك؟ أنا أربط أشرطة الزينة معًا وأنا بحاجة إلى قص الخيط. هل يمكنك أيضًا نفخ بعض البالونات؟ نحن بحاجة إلى تعليق البالونات أيضًا.

Hani : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?
بالطبع! ماذا تفعل أخواتك الأخريات؟ هل يساعدن؟

Youssef : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?
داليدا ونهى؟ نعم، إنهم كذلك. إنهم يزينون التورتة. ولديهم الشموع لها أيضًا. أوه، وها هي أمينة. أمينة! هل ترسلين الدعوات؟

Amina : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.
مرحبًا يوسف، نعم، أنا أفعل ذلك. ولكن أنا أرسل دعوات البريد الإلكتروني للجميع.

Youssef : Good idea. How many people are coming?
فكرة جيدة. كم عدد الأشخاص القادمون؟

Amina : I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.
لست متأكدة بعد، لكنني كتبت "برجاء الرد" على الدعوات. هذا يعني أنه يجب على الجميع إخباري إذا كانوا سيحضرون.

Hani : Who's choosing the music?
من سيختار الموسيقى؟

Amina : Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone, she made one for my party and it was really great.
داليدا سوف تقوم بعمل قائمة أغاني على هاتفها، لقد أعدت قائمة لحفلتي وكانت رائعة حقًا.

Hani : That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.
هذا صحيح. كانت رائعة حقًا. يمكننا أن نطلب منها عمل قائمة أغاني بعد أن تنتهي من التورتة.

Amina : And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.
نحن بحاجة إلى شخص بالغ لإطلاق الألعاب النارية في الحديقة عندما يحل الظلام.

Youssef : Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.
نعم، نسمة تحبهم. أنا أعرف، سوف أطلب من أبي أن يقوم بعمل ذلك.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I had a birthday party ....
   a) today b) last week c) yesterday d) last night
2. Hani decorated the ....
   a) cake b) juice c) cookies d) streamer
3. Fares .... up the streamers.
   a) blow b) make c) hung d) let
4. Youssef made a ....
   a) cake b) streamers c) balloons d) playlist

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Can you .... up the balloons?
   a) cut b) blow c) send d) write
2. Hana is sending the ....
   a) balloons b) fireworks c) playlist d) invitations
3. We need an adult to .... off the fireworks.
   a) decorate b) send c) let d) make
4. Mazen will hang up the ....
   a) streamers b) invitations c) playlist d) cake
5. They will let off the fireworks in the ....
   a) living room b) kitchen c) bathroom d) yard

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

balloons - party - hung - March - playlist

I'm Malak. I'm in grade six. Last year, My class had a great 1) .... called "Happy Mother's Day". It was on the 21st 2) .... Many of our mothers came to school to celebrate with us. We made a 3) .... and 4) .... up the streamers. The children gave their mothers nice presents.

Read the text and answer the questions.

Today we are having a nice party. It's my sister Mariam's birthday. We are very excited. We have a lot of things to do. My brother Ahmed is hanging up the streamers. He needs the scissors to cut the string. My mother is decorating the birthday cake. I am blowing up some balloons. My sister Toka is sending everyone email invitations. My cousin Ali is making a playlist. My father will let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "excited" is ....
   a) happy b) delighted c) unhappy d) pleased
2. Mariam is Ahmed's ....
   a) cousin b) sister c) mother d) friend
3. My .... is decorating the birthday cake
   a) sister b) bother c) cousin d) mother

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why does Ahmed need the scissors? ....
5. Who will let off the fireworks? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a playlist - her - Dalida - phone - on - made - .

....

2. to - We - streamers - hang up - need - the - .

....

3. you - the - me - Will - pass - scissors - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- i'm hanging up the streamers ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Your birthday party

(streamers - cake - playlist - invitations - sing - happy)

 Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson (2) I'M STUDYING HARD FOR MY EXAMS

Vocabulary
الكلمات

indoors	داخل (المنزل)	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	weather	طقس
news	أخبار	documentary	فيلم وثائقي	end	نهاية
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	few times	مرات قليلة	history	مادة التاريخ
slow reader	قارئ بطيء	revision	المراجعة	exams	اختبارات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
exercise	يتدرب - يتمرن	exercised	exercised
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
dance	يرقص	danced	danced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
tell	يخبر	told	told
spend	يقضي (وقتا)	spent	spent
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

How are things?	كيف هي الأحوال؟	study hard for	يذاكر بجد من أجل
spend my time	أقضي وقتي	It's important to	من المهم أن
get outside	يخرج	do exercise	يقوم بالتمرينات الرياضية
have fun	يستمتع	organize a party	ينظم حفلة
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	It's taking ages.	يستغرق وقتا طويلًا.
Write soon.	اكتب لي سريعا.	Tell me your news.	قل لي أخبارك.
go up	ترتفع	get me the DVD	تحضر لي دي في دي

Help your child identify these words.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Do the boys live in the same city?

From:	ali@qwikmail.com
To:	eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject:	What's your news?

Hi Eyad,

How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park.

مرحبًا إياد،

كيف هي الأمور؟

أنا أذاكر بجد لامتحاناتي في الوقت الحالي. لكن لا تقلق ، فأنا لا أقضي كل وقتي بالداخل! أعلم أنه من المهم الخروج والقيام ببعض التمارين ، لذلك أنا أمارس الجري كل صباح في الحديقة.

I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too - it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

وأنا أمارس ركوب الدراجات في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع مع والدي. أحاول أن أرى أصدقائي عدة مرات في الأسبوع أيضًا من الجيد الاسترخاء والاستمتاع أحيانًا ، ونحاول ألا نتحدث عن كيفية سير مراجعتنا! يقوم صديقي آسر بتنظيم حفلة في منزله من أجل نهاية الامتحانات، لذلك نتطلع جميعًا إلى ذلك.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! In your last email you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything in Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I am enjoying it. I love history books - and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

Write soon and tell me your news.

Ali

ما حالة الطقس في الإسكندرية؟ الجو حار جدًا هنا بالفعل! في بريدك الإلكتروني الأخير سألتني عما أقرأه في الوقت الحالي. سأنتهي من قراءة كل شيء عن مصر القديمة لكن الأمر سيستغرق وقتًا طويلًا لأنني قارئ بطيء! أنا أستمتع بذلك. أحب كتب التاريخ والفيلم الوثائقي رائع أيضًا. (قالت أمي أنها سوف تشتري لي جهاز دي في دي). ماذا عنك؟ ماذا تقرأ؟

اكتب لي سريعًا وقل لي أخبارك.

علي

Help your child listen and read.

Language Focus

Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to: نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر لـ :

1. talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking.
   التحدث عن الأفعال الجارية حول لحظة الكلام أو قريب منها.
   - They are building a new school this year.
   - She is studying for her exams this week.

2. talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.
   التحدث عن أفعال تحدث الآن وقت الكلام.
   - Look! The bird is flying in the sky.

3. describe things that are happening in a picture.
   وصف أشياء تحدث في صورة.
   - Look at the picture. Ahmed is feeding the monkeys.

Form التكوين

I		am				
He - She - It - Singular noun	+	is	+	verb	+	ing
We - You - They - Plural noun		are				

- I'm studying hard at the moment.
- My dad is working in France.

Spelling rules

1. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

swim → swimming sit → sitting

2. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) غير منطوقة، نحذفها.

ride → riding make → making

3. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) منطوقة، لا نحذفها.

see → seeing be → being

4. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) نحولهم إلى (y).

tie → tying lie → lying

Negation النفي

I	am	
He - She - It - Singular noun +	is	+ not + verb + ing
We - You - They - Plural noun	are	

- They aren't enjoying their vacation.
- I'm not listening to music.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Am	I	
Is	+ he - she - it - singular noun	+ verb + ing ..?
Are	we - you - they - plural noun	

- Are you playing football today?
  - Yes, I am. - No, I'm not.
- Is Sara helping her mom?
  - Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

Wh-question

	Am	I	
Q.W +	Is	+ he - she - it - singular noun	+ verb + ing ..?
	Are	we - you - they - plural noun	

A: What are you doing, girls?

B: We're helping to make the birthday cake.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

today	اليوم	now	الآن	these days	في هذه الأيام
Look!	انظر!	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	tonight	الليلة
Listen!	استمع!	Look out!	احترس!	still	لا يزال
this (morning - week - year)	هذا (الصباح - الأسبوع - العام)			Be careful!	كن حريصا!



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My dad .... the match now.
   a) watch b) watches c) is watching d) watched
2. The students .... practicing hard.
   a) are b) is c) am d) have
3. What is your brother .... at the moment?
   a) do b) does c) doing d) did
4. I .... basketball this week.
   a) don't play b) am not playing c) doesn't play d) aren't playing
5. She .... helping her mother.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
6. Amira .... at the moment.
   a) sing b) sings c) is singing d) are singing

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Look! He .... (play) tennis.
2. She .... (clean) the house this week.
3. .... (Does) she studying English now?
4. Ahmed .... (are) watching TV.
5. Ali and Ahmed .... (is) helping their mum.
6. .... (Do) they playing football at the moment?
7. He .... (doesn't) riding his bike now.
8. Nesma .... (are) wearing a red T-shirt.
9. Amina isn't .... (talk) to anyone.
10. Two boys are .... (take) photos.
11. Where .... (is) they going now?
11. Who is .... (wear) a blue T-shirt?

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali's studying hard for his ....
   a) exams b) exercise c) quiz d) cycling
2. His exams will start next ....
   a) day b) month c) week d) year
3. He studies .... hours a day.
   a) three b) two c) four d) five
4. He goes running in the ....
   a) school b) playground c) market d) park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm .... running in the park these days.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
2. .... you studying English now?
   a) Do b) Are c) Have d) Is
3. Amina is .... a new hat.
   a) wear b) wears c) wore d) wearing
4. I'm reading a book ....
   a) yesterday b) last night c) two days ago d) these days
5. .... cycling today?
   a) He is b) Is he c) Can he d) Does he
6. Ahmed isn't .... any cake.
   a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weekends - indoors - worry - exercises - running

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I'm not spending all my time 1) .... It's important to get outside and do some 2) .... , so I'm going 3) .... every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on 4) .... with my dad.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. playing - a - Are - they - game - ?

2. any - isn't - cake - Ahmed - eating - .

3. sisters - My - cooking - food - some - are - .

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I'm .... (practice) for the football game.
2. Look! Amina .... (wear) a party hat.
3. Ahmed .... (not eat) a cake now.
4. Is dad .... (take) photos today?
5. What .... (be) Noha and Dalia doing there?

6 Punctuate the following.

- are they playing a game

....

7 Write an e-mail to your friend Sara telling her about "Your news"

- Your name is Toka and your email address is toka@yahoo.com.
- Your friend's email address is sara@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements:

(study hard - exams - exercise - go running - cycle)

From: ....

To: ....

Subject: ....

....

....

....



BIRTHDAYS AROUND THE WORLD

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

noodles	مكرونة / شعرية	adults	بالغين	breath	نَفَس - نفخة
guests	ضيوف	birthday	عيد ميلاد	present	هدية
peaches	خوخ	burn	يحترق	blow out	يطفيء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

party	حفلة	country	دولة	India	الهند
birthday card	بطاقة عيد ميلاد	especially	خاصةً	everywhere	في كل مكان
important	هام	age	عمر	flames	لهب
celebration	احتفال	tradition	عادة - تقليد	Chinese	صيني

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
invite	يدعو	invited	invited
burn	يحرق / يحترق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
blow out	ينفخ / يطفئ	blew out	blown out
give	يعطي	gave	given
think	يعتقد	thought	though

Definitions تعريفات

adults	fully grown people, not children	بالغين
blow out	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame	يطفئ
breath	the air that comes out of your mouth	نَفَس
noodles	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs	مكرونة / شعرية
guests	people you invite to your home	ضيوف

Lesson (3)

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

around the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	a longer life	حياة أطول
have a party	يقيم حفل	give you a long life	يعطيك عمرًا طويلًا
at this age	في هذا العمر	invite to	يدعو إلى
piece of	قطعة من	a lot of	كثير من

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Our birthday celebrations: Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

احتفالات أعياد الميلاد: يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد في جميع أنحاء العالم. ماذا نفعل في مصر؟ نحن عادة نقوم بعمل تورتات عيد ميلاد لأطفالنا و نضع الشموع عليها لإظهار عمرهم. غالبًا ما نقيم الحفلات مع الكثير من العائلة والأصدقاء. يحصل الأطفال عادة على هدية أيضًا.

Birthdays are not just for children: What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays.

In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.

أعياد الميلاد ليست فقط للأطفال: وماذا عن أعياد الميلاد في البلدان الأخرى؟ في الولايات المتحدة وبريطانيا ، من المعتاد تقديم هدايا جيدة للأصدقاء والعائلة في أعياد ميلادهم حتى عندما يكونون بالغين. غالبًا ما يعطي الناس بطاقات عيد ميلاد للآخرين أيضًا ، خاصة في أعياد الميلاد المهمة. في جنوب أفريقيا، سن ٢١ هو عيد ميلاد مهم لأنك تصبح بالغًا في هذا العمر. في هولندا ، يحصل الأطفال على هدايا أكبر عندما يبلغون من العمر ٥ أو ١٠ أو ١٥ أو ٢٠ عامًا. في نيجيريا ، أهم أعياد الميلاد هي عندما يكون عمر الشخص سنة أو ١٠ أو ١٥ عامًا.



Blow or burn the candles: In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves.

نفخ لتطفئ أو أحرق الشموع: في العديد من البلدان، يحب الأطفال إطفاء الشموع في كعك عيد ميلادهم. من الجيد أن تفعل هذا بنفس واحد! لكن في الهند، تترك الشموع حتى تحترق. هل تعلم أنه عندما يكون عيد ميلاد طفل في البرازيل، يقدمون أول قطعة من كعكة عيد ميلادهم إلى أهم الأشخاص في أسرتهم؟ وهو الأم أو الأب! في الهند أيضًا، يعطي الطفل صاحب عيد الميلاد الكعك لجميع الضيوف في حفلتهم أولاً، قبل أن يحصلوا على البعض منها لأنفسهم.



A longer life: Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

حياة أطول: بعض البلدان لديها طعام عيد ميلاد مختلف. في الصين ، يحب الناس تناول الشعرية الطويلة أو الخوخ في عيد ميلادهم. لماذا؟ لأنهم يعتقدون أن هذه يمكن أن تعطيك حياة طويلة. وغالبًا ما يكون الشعب الصيني أكبر سنًا. لماذا؟ لأنهم يصبح عمرهم سنة في يوم ولادتهم. لذلك إذا كنت تبلغ من العمر عشر سنوات فإن الطفل الصيني يكون عمره إحدى عشرة سنة.

Tip!

To match **headings** to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph. Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics.

لمطابقة العناوين مع الفقرات في النص ، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولاً. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية في كل فقرة. ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك أي كلمات متشابهة أو تدور حول نفس الموضوعات.

Estimating volume

تقدير الحجم

Tip!

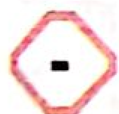
When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can **estimate**, or guess, the amount.

For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's **about** half a liter" not, "There's 487 milliliters."

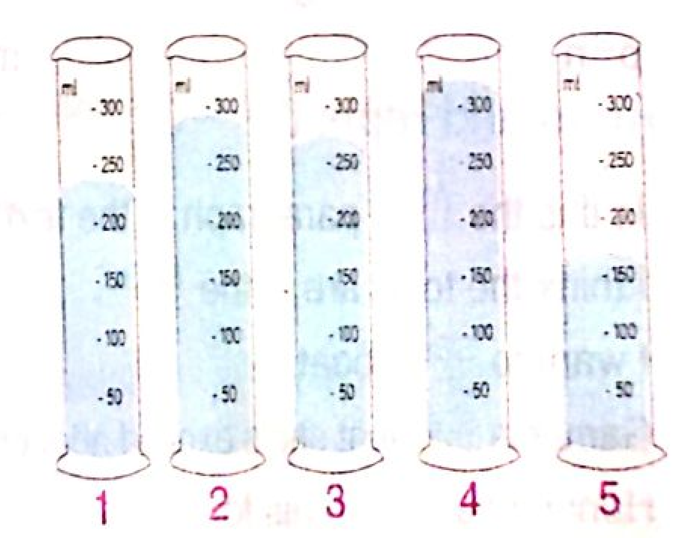
We often use the word **about** when giving an estimation.

عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما ، لا نحتاج دائمًا إلى أن نكون دقيقين. يمكننا تقدير ، أو تخمين ، المقدار.
فمثلا، إذا سألتك أمك: "كم مقدار الحليب الموجود في الثلاجة؟ "يمكنك أن تقول: " هناك حوالي نصف لتر" ولا تقول: " هناك 487 ملليلتر." غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة حوالي عند إعطاء التقدير.

- 410 ml is about → 400 ml
- 490 ml is about 500 ml = $\frac{1}{2}$ Liter
- 258 ml is about 250 ml.



Look at the measuring tubes. Estimate how much water is in each one? How much water is there in total?



1. ......200...... ml
2. .... ml
3. .... ml
4. .... ml
5. .... ml

6. There's about .... ml of water in total.

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.

Long /ei/

(a - e)	(ai)	(ay)
cake تورتة	train قطار	say يقول





Short /e/

bed سرير	head رأس	shed حظيرة - كوخ





Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

/ei/				/e/			
bake	يخبز	main	رئيسي	bread	خبز	sell	يبيع
pay	يدفع	shade	ظل	get	يحصل على	met	قابل
stay	يقيم / يبقى	sail	شراع / يبحر	ledge	حافة / رف	pen	قلم جاف
wait	ينتظر	plate	طبق	said	قال	desk	مكتب
mate	زميل	gate	بوابة	wet	مبلل	pet	حيوان أليف
pain	ألم			men	رجال		

Read and repeat. اقرأ وردد.

Is this the main paragraph in the text? هل هذه هي الفقرة الرئيسية في النص؟

I think the tools are in the shed. أعتقد أن الأدوات موجودة في الحظيرة.

I want to sail a boat. أريد أن أبحر بمركب.

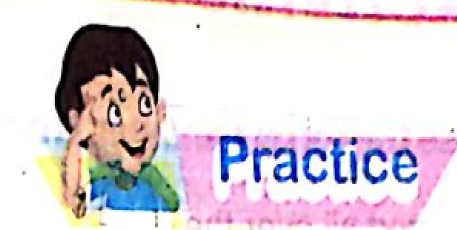
Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday. قالت جميلة إنها سعيدة جدًا بإجازتها.

Hani has a pain in his foot. هاني مصاب بألم في قدمه.

I baked a plate of tasty cakes. خبزت طبقًا من الكعك اللذيذ.

Let's get the pens from the desk. هيا نحضر الأقلام من المكتب.

Help your child pronounce these words.
ساعد طفلك أن ينطق على هذه الكلمات.



Practice

1 Read the words and write them in the correct group.

bake - bread - get - ledge - pay - said - stay - wait

/ei/	/e/

2 Read and choose the correct word.

1. Is this the (main - men) paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the (shed - shade).
3. I want to (sail - sell) a boat!
4. Gameela (say - said) that she's excited about her holiday.
5. Hani has a (pain - pen) in his foot.
6. I have a pain in my (bed - head).
7. I catch the (train - plane) from the station.
8. Mothers (take - bake) cakes in the oven.
9. The cakes are on the (plate - gate).
10. My class (mate - wait) is clever.

General

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Birthdays are celebrated all over the ....
   a) country b) city c) town d) world
2. In .... we usually make birthday cakes for our children.
   a) Egypt b) Nigeria c) India d) China
3. We put .... on cakes to show children's ages.
   a) numbers b) pens c) pencils d) candles
4. The children usually get ...., too.
   a) book b) homework c) presents d) money

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... is the air that comes out of our mouth.
   a) Breath b) Breeze c) Adult d) Guest
2. He invited many .... to his birthday party.
   a) presents b) photos c) noodles d) guests
3. To .... out is to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame.
   a) turn b) take c) blow d) eat
4. .... are fully grown people, not children.
   a) Kids b) Boys c) Babies d) Adults
5. Egyptian people often .... songs at birthday parties.
   a) sing b) turn c) blow d) make

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

breath - burn - blow - guests - cakes

Children every where like party food. This often includes small 1) ...., sandwiches and snacks. In many countries, children like to 2) .... out candles on their birthday cakes. In India, the candles are left to 3) .... In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the 4) .... at their party first.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questions.

Birthday are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their ages. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. Children usually get presents. Children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. In Brazil, they give the first piece of birthday cakes to the most important people on their family. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In .... we usually make birthday cakes.
   a) India b) Egypt c) China d) Brazil
2. The underlined word "long" is opposite of ....
   a) short b) happy c) tall d) heavy
3. We put .... on cakes to show children's ages.
   a) chocolate b) streamers c) peaches d) candles

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do people like to eat on their birthday in China? ....
5. Summerize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. friends - We - often - a lot of - have parties - with - .
   ....
2. are - Birthdays - over - celebrated - the world - all - .
   ....
3. want - to - boat - I - sail - a -.
   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Birthday celebration in Egypt

Guiding elements:

(Egypt - parties - present)

....

....

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary الكلمات

Mother's Day	عيد الأم	dress up	يرتدي / يتنكر
invitation	دعوة	details	تفاصيل
address	عنوان	costume	زي تنكري
reply	رد	local community	المجتمع المحلى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
invite	يدعو	invited	invited
address	يخاطب	addressed	addressed
receive	يتسلم	received	received
attend	يحضر	attended	attended
reply	يرد - يجيب	replied	replied
correct	يصحح	corrected	corrected
confirm	يتأكد	confirmed	confirmed
figure out	يكتشف	figured out	figured out

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
know	يعرف	knew	known

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

as well as	بالإضافة إلى	Yours sincerely,	المخلص لك
reply by	الرد بحلول	"be" addressed to	موجه إلى

Help your child identify these words.

Writing Skill

How to write a formal email invitation: كيفية كتابة دعوة رسمية عبر بريد إلكتروني

1- We use **formal language** when we speak or write to people we don't know very well.
١- نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب إلى أشخاص لا نعرفهم جيدًا.

2- We use **polite** language and correct **spelling** and **grammar** in formal writing.
٢- كما أننا نستخدم لغة مهذبة وإملاء وقواعد صحيحة في الكتابة الرسمية.



Read and learn some formal and informal expressions.

Formal expressions	تعبيرات رسمية	Informal expression	تعبيرات غير رسمية
Your sincerely,	المخلص لك	Bye for now,	
celebration	احتفال	party	
attend	يحضر	come to	
confirm	يؤكد	say yes or no	
Dear	عزيزي	Hi!	

Phrases in the email	عبارات رسالة البريد الإلكتروني	Function	وظيفتها
Dear		opening phrase	عبارة افتتاحية
I'm writing to .... / invite you to		Reason	سبب الكتابة
please reply		A request	طلب
Yours sincerely,		closing phrase	عبارة ختامية

To plan an invitation using formal language

A celebration at your school

What is the celebration for?
Mother's Day celebration for school

Where is it?
School Hall

When is it?
"time and date"
Monday 21st March 5 pm to 6 pm.

When the person has to reply?
25th February

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

From:	celebrationgroup@newschool.com
To:	Mr Ahmed Hegazy
Subject:	Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's **Mother's Day celebration** this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can **attend**.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to **confirm** if you can attend the celebration.

Yours **sincerely**,

Randa Gamal

عزيزي الأستاذ أحمد،

أكتب لأدعوك إلى الاحتفال بعيد الأم في مدرستنا هذا العام. نحن ننظم يومًا خاصًا للمناسبة في يوم الأحد ٢١ مارس (التفاصيل أدناه). بالإضافة إلى الطلاب والمعلمين ، ندعو أشخاصًا من المجتمع المحلي الذين غالبًا ما يساعدون مدرستنا. نأمل بشدة أن تتمكن من الحضور.

التاريخ: الأحد ٢١ مارس

الوقت: ٤:٠٠ م - ٧:٠٠ م

الموقع: قاعة المدرسة.

الرجاء الرد كتابةً على عنوان البريد الإلكتروني أعلاه

يرجى الرد قبل ٢٠ فبراير لتأكيد ما إذا كان يمكنك حضور الاحتفال.

المخلص لك،

راندا جمال.

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the celebration? ....

2. Who is the invitation addressed to? ....

3. When and where is the celebration? ....

Help your child learn how to write a formal email invitation.



You are going to make a poster for a celebration at your school or in your community. سوف تقوم بعمل ملصق لاحتفال في مدرستك أو في مجتمعك.

1 What are you celebrating? Who do you want to come?
ما الذي ستحتفل به؟ من تريده أن يأتي؟

2 Plan your poster. What information do you need to include? (place, date, time)
خطط الملصق الخاص بك. ما المعلومات التي تحتاج إلى تتضمنها؟ (المكان، التاريخ والوقت)

3 Think about the design. What can help make people notice and read your poster? (i.e. lots of color, different kinds of writing, photos)
فكر في التصميم. ما الذي يمكن أن يساعد في جعل الناس يلاحظون ويقرأون الملصق الخاص بك؟
(أعني، الكثير من الألوان، وأنواع مختلفة من الكتابة والصور)

Look and read.
انظر واقرأ.



Book Day Party!

Let's celebrate reading!

Dress up as your favorite character
from your favorite book.
Figure out which character your friends are
from the clothes they are wearing.
We have an amazing prize for the
best costume.
Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks!
Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall
Family members all welcome!

حفلة يوم الكتاب!
هيا بنا نحتفل بالقراءة!
ارتدى مثل الشخصية المفضلة لديك
من كتابك المفضل.
اعرف شخصية أصدقائك
من الملابس التي يرتدونها.
لدينا جائزة مذهلة لأفضل زي.
تعال وجرب المشروبات والوجبات الخفيفة اللذيذة!
الخميس، ٢ مساء، في قاعة المدرسة
أفراد الأسرة كلهم محل ترحيب!

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our school's Mother's Day celebration is next ....
   a) Sunday b) Tuesday c) Monday d) Saturday
2. We are .... a special day for the event.
   a) playing b) watching c) organizing d) showing
3. Mother's Day is on ....
   a) March 21st b) May 21st c) April 21st d) March 22nd
4. We are inviting people from the local ....
   a) farm b) village c) community d) country

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I hope you can .... the party.
   a) miss b) attend c) email d) invite
2. Next week is our school's Mother's Day ....
   a) information b) location c) celebration d) invitation
3. Please, reply to .... if you can attend the celebration.
   a) hope b) figure c) confirm d) forget
4. The word "celebration" means ....
   a) game b) party c) estimation d) information
5. We can use "Dear" or .... in the opening phrase.
   a) bye b) time c) party d) Hi

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Figure - prize - party - Dress - book

Let's celebrate reading. 1) .... up as your favorite character from your favorite 2) .... 3) .... out which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing. We have an amazing 4) .... for the best costume.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. writing - invite - I'm - to - you - .

....

2. the - Can - attend - you - celebration - ?

....

3. hope - We - can - attend - you - .

....



Punctuate the following.

who is the invitation addressed to

....

6 Write an email.

Write a formal invitation to Mr Eslam to attend your school annual celebration at the School Hall on Thursday November 30. Your email address is celebrationgroup@Al-Baherschool.com. Your name is Maha

Guiding ideas:

- What the celebration is for
- When it is (time and date)
- Where it is
- When the person has to reply

From: ....

To: ....

Subject: ....

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Our birthday celebrations

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

Your free time

I'm studying hard for my exams these days. But I'm not spending all my free time indoors. I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise too, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too, it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going!

A formal invitation to a celebration

Dear Mr Mahmoud,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Friday October 15 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 15

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Sports Hall

Yours sincerely,

Asmaa

Preparing for the party

decorate the cake	يزين التورتة	blow up the balloons	ينفخ البالونات
hang up streamers	يعلق أشرطة الزينة	make a playlist	يعد قائمة أغانى
write the invitations	يكتب الدعوات	let off the fireworks	يطلق الألعاب النارية

Vocabulary

time	وقت	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	invitation	دعوة
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	few times	مرات قليلة	candles	شموع
details	تفاصيل	local community	المجتمع المحلى	end	نهاية
prices	الأسعار	documentary	فيلم وثائقي	revision	المراجعة
armchair	كرسي بذراعين	slow reader	قارئ بطيء	burn	يحترق
reply	رد	adults	أشخاص بالغين	breath	نَفَس
guests	ضيوف	blow out	يطفئ	present	هدية

Pronunciation

Long /ei/				Short /e/			
bake	يخبز	main	رئيسي	bread	خبز	sell	يبيع
pay	يدفع	shade	ظل	get	يحصل على	met	قابل
stay	يقيم / يبقى	sail	شراع / يبحر	ledge	حافة	pen	قلم جاف
wait	ينتظر	plate	طبق	said	قال	desk	مكتب
mate	زميل	say	يقول	wet	مبلل	pet	حيوان أليف
pain	ألم	gate	بوابة	men	رجال	shed	حظيرة / كوخ
cake	تورتة			bed	سرير	head	رأس

Language

Present Continuous Tense

- She's studying for her exams.
- They aren't enjoying their vacation.
- Are you playing football this year?
- Yes, I am.
- No, I'm not.

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

بعد قائمة الأغاني	....	يعلق أشرطة الزينة	....
يطلق الألعاب النارية	....	ينفخ البالونات	....
مقص	....	حديقة	....
يزين التورتة	....	يكتب الدعوات	....

Lesson (2)

أخبار	....	ركوب الدراجات	....
مرات قليلة	....	المراجعة	....
نهاية	....	قارئ بطيء	....
مصر القديمة	....	مادة التاريخ	....
يذاكر بجد	....	الأسعار	....
وقت	....	كرسي بذراعين	....

Lesson (3)

شموع	....	عيد ميلاد	....
أشخاص بالغين	....	هدية	....
نفس	....	يطفئ	....
دولة	....	حفلة	....
ضيوف	....	مكرونة شعرية	....
خوخ	....	يحترق	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

تفاصيل	....	رد	....
يدعو	....	يحضر	....
المجتمع المحلي	....	دعوة	....
عيد الأم	....	يتنكر / يرتدي	....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nesma is Youssef's ....
   a) mother b) friend c) cousin d) sister
2. Youssef is hanging up the ....
   a) streamers b) balloons c) cake d) candles
3. Dalia and Noha are decorating the birthday ....
   a) balloons b) candles c) cake d) playlist
4. They have .... for the birthday cake.
   a) chocolate b) candles c) streamers d) music

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We need an adult to let off the ....
   a) streamer b) playlist c) cakes d) fireworks
2. She blew out the .... with one breath.
   a) candles b) streamers c) cakes d) noodles
3. We .... Mother's Day at school on March 21st.
   a) invite b) celebrate c) blow d) decorate
4. " .... " are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water and eggs.
   a) Tomatoes b) Potatoes c) Peaches d) Noodles

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

noodles - born - life - China - streamers

Some countries have different birthday food. In 1) .... , people like to eat long 2) .... or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long 3) .... And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they became one on the day they are 4) .... So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11.

Read the text and answer the questions.

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Children everywhere like party ....
   a) drink b) food c) snacks d) fruit
2. It is good to blow out the candles with .... breath.
   a) one b) two c) three d) four
3. The opposite of the underlined word "small" is ....
   a) little b) tiny c) big d) a few

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of the text? ....
5. Who gets the first piece of birthday cake in India? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. sending - email - I'm - everyone - invitations - .
2. organizing - party - is - She - sister's - her - .
3. a pain - Hani - his - in - foot - has - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Are you .... (wash) the car?
2. They .... (not hang) up the streamers now.

7 Punctuate the following.

- is he writing the invitations ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Things you do on birthday parties

(balloons - fireworks)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

playlist - present - decorating - invited - invitations

Adam : Happy birthday, Hani.
Hani : Thank you, Adam.
Adam : Have you 1) .... all our friends?
Hani : Yes, I have sent 2) .... for them all.
Adam : Where is your sister?
Hani : She is 3) .... the birthday cake with my mom.
Adam : I like the 4) .... Who made it?
Hani : My brother made the playlist.
Adam : Here is your 5) ....

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

help - invitations - party - blowing - streamers

Allam : Hi, Sami. What are you doing?
Sami : Hi, Allam. I'm 1) .... up some balloons.
Allam : What are they for?
Sami : They are for my brother's birthday 2) ....
Allam : Can I 3) .... you?
Sami : Sure. You can hang up the 4) ....
Allam : Who is sending the 5) .... ?
Sami : My sister is doing that.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	decorate	hang	balloons	write	(..................)
2.	invitation	make	playlist	streamers	(..................)
3.	candles	present	noodles	sell	(..................)
4.	pen	book	shed	desk	(..................)
5.	studying	enjoy	wearing	playing	(..................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	blow up	fireworks	let off	hang up	(..................)
2.	blow out	balloons	streamers	cake	(..................)
3.	guests	people	men	bake	(..................)
4.	ask	passed	tied	invited	(..................)
5.	peaches	noodles	cake	breath	(..................)

Unit 5

Amazing Journeys

رحلات مدهشة

In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن رحالة مشهورين في الماضي.

- talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

  يتحدث عن الأشياء التي حدثت في الماضي باستخدام الأفعال غير المنتظمة الشائعة.

- understand the difference between the sounds / dʒ / and / ʒ /.

  يفهم الفرق بين الأصوات /dʒ/ و /ʒ/.

- listen to understand specific details in a text.

  يستمع ليفهم تفاصيل محددة في نص.

- write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

  يكتب مفكرة يومية للتعبير عن المشاعر والحالة المزاجية.

- research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

  يبحث ويصمم ملصق عن رحالة مشهور.

Key vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية

Traveling expressions


go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية


ride a camel
يركب جملًا


travel by train
يسافر بالقطار


sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة


go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة


take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

famous	مشهور	interesting	شيق / مثير للاهتمام / ممتع
explorer	مستكشف	difficult	صعب
vacation	إجازة / عطلة	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
diary	يوميات / مفكرة	museum	متحف
experience	خبرة / تجربة "حياتية"	adventure	مغامرة
travels	رحلات	objects	أشياء
record	رقم قياسي		

Important places

أماكن هامة

Croatia	كرواتيا	Venice	مدينة البندقية
ancient China	الصين القديمة	Hormuz	مضيق هرمز
Iran	إيران	Korcula	كوركولا (جزيرة كرواتية)

Help your child identify these words.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
remember يتذكر	remembered	remembered
call ينادي - يسمي	called	called
imagine يتخيل	imagined	imagined
travel يسافر	traveled	traveled
sail يبحر	sailed	sailed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
know يعرف	knew	known
read يقرأ	read	read
take يأخذ	took	taken
ride يركب	rode	ridden
get to يصل إلى	got to	got to
fly يطير	flew	flown

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

arrive in	يصل إلى (مدينة / دولة)	in the 13th century	في القرن الثالث عشر
come to life	يعود للحياة	on an island	على جزيرة
for a week	لمدة أسبوع	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
It's far away.	إنها بعيدة جدًا		

Note:

go on	vacation	يذهب في عطلة	by + وسيلة مواصلات	ship	بالسفينة
	a journey	يذهب في رحلة (طويلة)		train	بالقطار
	a voyage	يذهب في رحلة بحرية		car	بالسيارة
				sea	بحرًا

Help your child identify these words.

Lesson (1)

Famous travelers / explorers

رحالة / مستكشفون مشهورون



Ibn Battuta
1304 - 1368



Vasco da Gama
1460 - 1524



Marco Polo
1254 - 1324

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Where did Injy go on vacation?

Rana : What are you reading, Injy?

ماذا تقرأين، يا إنجي؟

Injy : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel **diary**. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

أوه مرحبًا، رنا. إنها يوميات رحلتي. أريد أن أتذكر رحلة عائلتي في كرواتيا قبل بضعِ سنوات.

Rana : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

هذه فكرة جيدة. ما الشيء المفضل لديك بخصوص هذه الرحلة؟

Injy : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

أعتقد أنه كان زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.

Rana : Really? Where is that?

حقاً ؟ أين هذا؟

Injy : It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a **trip** there. It's a really interesting museum- all about the travels of Marco Polo.

إنه على جزيرة في كرواتيا تسمى كوركولا. قمنا برحلة هناك. إنه حقا متحف مثير للاهتمام عن كل رحلات ماركو بولو.

Rana : Who was Marco Polo?

من هو ماركو بولو؟

Injy : He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

كان ماركو بولو مستكشفًا إيطاليًا وأحد الأشخاص الأوائل من الغرب الذين زاروا الصين. ذهب إلى هناك في القرن الثالث عشر وكتب يوميات عن تجاربه. تسمى رحلات ماركو بولو.

Rana : How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

كيف كان الناس يذهبون إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعيدة جدًا. فلم يكن بمقدورك الطيران إلى هناك ، أو السفر بالقطار!

Injy : It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo went a long **voyage** by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

كان الأمر صعبا للغاية - كانت الرحلة تستغرق سنوات! ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة بحرية طويلة عن طريق البحر. أبحر

على متن سفينة من مدينة البندقية إلى كوركولا، ثم إلى إيران. عندما وصل إلى مضيق هرمز ، توقف وذهب عبر الصحراء.

ركب جملًا طول الطريق إلى الصين!

Rana : Wow, what an adventure!

واو ، يا لها من مغامرة!

Injy : Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

نعم، وتخيل الوصول إلى الصين منذ ما يقرب من 800 عام! كان الأمر مختلفا حينها. كان المتحف يحتوي على أشياء

كثيرة من الصين القديمة. حقا جعلت قصة ماركو بولو تعود للحياة.

Did you know ?

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.



أطول رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام كانت مسيرة جورج ميجان من تيرا ديل فويغو في الأرجنتين إلى ألاسكا. بلغ طولها 30,608 كم

وأتمها في 2,425 يومًا بين عامي 1977 و 1983.

Help your child listen and read.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Marco Polo was a famous ....
   a) teacher b) engineer c) vet d) explorer
2. Marco Polo went to .... in the 13th century.
   a) China b) London c) India d) Brazil
3. He went on a long voyage by ....
   a) camel b) sea c) air d) land
4. He wrote a .... about his experiences.
   a) novel b) story c) diary d) poem

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 The .... had a lot of things from ancient China.
   a) zoo b) museum c) hospital d) school
2. Tourists like to .... camels.
   a) sail b) fly c) ride d) drive
3. Anas likes to .... by ship.
   a) sail b) walk c) swim d) dive
4. My daughter went .... a voyage.
   in on at with
5. A .... is a period of 100 years.
   year week century decade

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

trip - China - bird - island - travels

Injy visited Marco Polo Museum a few years ago. The museum is on an 1) .... called Korcula. She took a 2) .... there. The museum is all about the 3) .... of Marco Polo. He was one of the first people from the West to visit 4) ....



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Injy went with her family on a vacation in Croatia. They visited Marco Polo Museum. It's on an Island called Korcula. It's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo. Marco Polo is an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo.* Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The word "vacation" means ....
   a) holiday b) diary c) museum d) island
2. Marco Polo Museum is on a/an .... called Korcula.
   a) hill b) mountain c) lake d) island
3. Marco Polo is an Italian ....
   a) teacher b) explorer c) engineer d) doctor

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did Injy go with her family? ....
5. What did Marco Polo write? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. vacation - Where - was - last - your - ?

   ....

2. family - I - Aswan - with - to - went - my - .

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

- how long were you there, Anas

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Marco Polo

(Italian - traveller - China - sea - diary)



Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson (2) A SURPRISING DISCOVERY

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

discovery	اكتشاف	triangular	مثلث الشكل
axe	فأس	sculptures	منحوتات
tools	أدوات	clay	صلصال

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

humans	البشر	civilization	حضارة
objects	أشياء	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
culture	ثقافة	works of art	أعمال فنية
guide	مرشد	complicated	معقد - متشابك
Ife people	شعب إيفي	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
Nok	قرية "نوك"	quality	جودة
almost	تقريبًا	similar	متشابه
tour	جولة سياحية	mystery	لغز / سر غامض
CE	ميلاديًا		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
believe	يعتقد	believed	believed
affect	يؤثر على	affected	affected
create	ينشئ - يبتكر	created	created
study	يدرس - يذاكر	studied	studied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
am/is	يكون	was	been
are	يكونوا	were	been
find	يجد	found	found
cut	يقطع	cut	cut

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in a sitting position	في وضع الجلوس	find out	يكتشف/ يعرف
the quality of the work	جودة العمل	iron farming tools	أداوت زراعة حديدية
have the ability to	لديه القدرة على	a team of	فريق من
in the same style	بنفس النمط	angry with	غاضب من
come from	يأتي من	learn about	يتعلم عن
from around	من حوالي	famous for making	مشهور بصنع
not know much about	لا يعرف الكثير عن		
there's no written information about			لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن

Definitions تعريفات

clay	a type of earth that is sticky when wet	طين / صلصال
tools	objects we use to make or do things	أدوات/ عِدد
sculptures	art made from stone or wood	منحوتات
archaeologist	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground	عالم آثار
mystery	something that people do not understand or cannot explain	لغز / سر غامض

Help your child identify these words.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful **clay sculptures** of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles: They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.

منذ ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام ، السكان المحليون في قرية نوك الصغيرة في نيجيريا ، دولة في غرب أفريقيا ، وجدوا بعض الأشياء غير العادية تحت الأرض. كانت هذه الأشياء منحوتات طينية جميلة لبشر. كانت المنحوتات كلها بنفس النمط: كان لديهم عيون كبيرة وتسريحات شعر متشابكة: وكانوا عادة في وضعية الجلوس وأيديهم على أرجلهم. كانت جودة العمل لا تصدق.

A team of **archaeologists** went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming **tools**. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

ذهب فريق من علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لمعرفة المزيد. وجدوا العديد من المنحوتات المماثلة في مساحة مئات الكيلومترات حول نوك. كانت هناك أيضًا أدوات زراعة حديدية وحجرية. اتفق علماء الآثار على أن معظم هذه الأشياء كانت على الأرجح من حضارة والتي كان لديها القدرة على عمل أدوات من الحديد والحجر، والتي صنعت فنًا جميلًا.

They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures affected the famous works of art by the later Ife people, whowere in Nigeria fromthe11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a **mystery** today.



اطلقوا على هذه الحضارة اسم حضارة "نوك"، على اسم القرية التي تم العثور على المنحوتات بها. يعتقد أن المنحوتات أثرت على الأعمال الفنية المشهورة لشعب الأيفي اللاحق، الذين كانوا في نيجيريا من القرن الحادي عشر إلى القرن الخامس عشر الميلادي. كان شعب الأيفي مشهور بصنع تماثيل معدنية جميلة لرؤوس البشر. ومع ذلك ، لا يوجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب النوك ، لذلك نستطيع فقط أن نتعرف على حضارتهم من أعمالهم الفنية. ولا تزال حضارتهم لغزًا حتى الآن.

Language Focus

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

It's used to talk about finished actions or situations in the past.

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي.

e.g. I went to the park last Friday.

They played football yesterday.

Form التكوين

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، وله شكلان:

1. أفعال منتظمة (Regular verbs) وتتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) إلى الفعل.

like	يحب	→ liked	play	يلعب	→ played
walk	يمشي	→ walked	study	يذاكر	→ studied

2. أفعال غير منتظمة (Irregular verbs) وتحفظ كما هي.

is	يكون	→ was	have	يمتلك	→ had
swim	يسبح	→ swam	do	يفعل	→ did
see	يرى	→ saw	go	يذهب	→ went

Negation النفي

Subject (فاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)....

- We didn't have a vacation last year.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)..... ?

- Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

Wh-question

QW + did + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل).... ?

- Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

Help your child identify and use the past simple

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month,.....)	(الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي
ago	منذ	in + (تاريخ ماضي)	في عام .....

- We played tennis yesterday.
- He went to the zoo a week ago.

Verb to "be" in th past

Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was ......

- Mona was angry with her sister yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were ......

- They were happy at the party last week.

Negation النفي

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + not (wasn't) ..

- She wasn't happy there.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were + not (weren't) ..

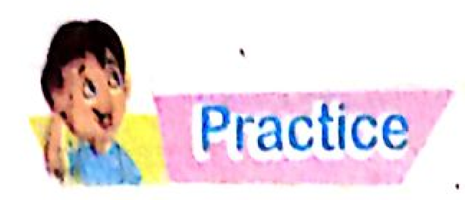
- We weren't sad yesterday.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

(Was / Were) + subject (فاعل) + باقي الجملة?

- Was she happy in New York? - Yes, she was.
- Were they at the park yesterday? - No, they weren't.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Anas .... angry with his brother yesterday.
   a) am b) was c) is d) were
2. Safia .... a great time at the carnival last week.
   a) had b) have c) has d) having
3. Sara and Anas didn't .... pizza for us last night.
   a) made b) makes c) make d) making
4. My sons .... on a vacation last year.
   a) goes b) going c) go d) went
5. Seif and Omar .... in my class last year.
   a) were b) are c) was d) is
6. I .... interested in football.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
7. We .... in the garden yesterday.
   a) are b) is c) was d) were
8. .... you go to the cinema last week?
   a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Were

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The archaeologists .... (find) many old tools in 2020.
2. How .... (be) your trip last week?
3. We .... (go) to the beach last night.
4. Hany didn't .... (went) with the guide.
5. Did your mom .... (made) your lunch?
6. The water in the sea .... (weren't) warm.
7. The books .... (was) in my bag
8. I .... (were) with my uncle on a trip.
9. He .... (have) a lot of homework yesterday

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There was a surprising discovery in the village of ....
   a) Bago b) Nok c) Noah d) Kebba
2. They found clay sculptures of ....
   a) animals b) birds c) monsters d) humans
3. They had large .... and complicated hair styles.
   a) eyes b) nose c) heads d) legs
4. The quality of the work was ....
   a) boring b) credible c) incredible d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use iron .... for farming.
   a) tools b) pens c) books d) games
2. Egyptians should be proud of their country's ....
   a) air b) water c) civilization d) tools
3. .... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet.
   a) Clay b) Metal c) Wood d) Plastic
4. The Nok civilization made beautiful ....
   a) land b) art c) tent d) paint
5. She .... to the library last week.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
6. He .... very happy yesterday.
   a) is b) was c) are d) were

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sculptures - complicated - style - legs - position

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay 1) .... of humans. The sculptures were all in the same 2) .... : they had large eyes and 3) .... hair styles. They were usually in a sitting 4) .... with their hands on their legs.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found sculptures in this area, and archaeologists went there to study them. The Nok people made sculptures from clay, and tools from stone and iron. Their sculptures were usually of humans. These were beautifully made and had unusual eyes and hair styles. There is no written information about the Nok culture, so we don't know much about the people even now.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. There is no .... information about the Nok culture.
   a) written b) spoken c) read d) painted
2. The Nok people lived in ....
   a) America b) France c) Egypt d) Nigeria
3. The underlined word "unusual" has the same meaning as ....
   a) usual b) regular c) strange d) simple

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did people find in this area? ....
5. Why did archaeologists go there? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. tools - iron - The Nok - were - people's - made of - .

....

2. was - How - trip - your - , Kareem - ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Jana and Gameela .... (make) pizza for us last night.
2. Hani didn't .... (went) on the palace tour with the guide.
3. Did your mum .... (bought) your dress, Laila?

7 Punctuate the following.

- hani didn t go to Cairo.

....

Lesson (5) Part (A)

MARCO POLO CROSSES THE DESERT

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي	sand dunes	كثبان رملية	caravan	قافلة
fascinated	منبهر - منجذب	legend	أسطورة	wasteland	قفر - أرض خراب
dromedary	جمل عربي "بسنام واحد"				

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

bactrian camel	جمل ذو سنامين	landscape	منظر طبيعي	frightening	مخيف
exhausted	مُتعب / منهك	horizon	الأفق	voice	صوت
mysterious	غامض	dry sea	البحر الجاف	wind	الرياح
silently	بصمت	ocean	محيط	waves	أمواج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
boil	يغلي	boiled	boiled
look like	يُشبه	looked like	looked like
last for	يدوم	lasted for	lasted for
roll	يتدحرج	rolled	rolled
sway	يتمايل	swayed	swayed
wander	يتجول	wandered	wandered
freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for the first time	لأول مرة	go on	يستمر / يواصل
huge yellow waves	أمواج صفراء ضخمة	make sure	يتأكد
in fact	في الحقيقة	boiling hot	حار جدًا
up and down	أعلى و أسفل	freezing cold	بارد جدًا

Definitions

تعريفات

fascinated by	very interested in	مفتون / مبهور بـ
caravan	a group of camels and people traveling together	قافلة
swaying	moving from side to side	يتأرجح - يتمايل
wasteland	a landscape where nothing lives	أرض جرداء
wander	walk about without a direction	يتجول
legend	a very old and famous story	أسطورة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Marco Polo crosses the desert



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was **fascinated** by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the **camels** made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

كان ماركو بولو في الحادي والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب، في عام 1275، إلى صحراء جوبي لأول مرة. وكان مفتونا بالكثبان الرملية التي تحركت مع كل خطوة تخطوها الجمال. وكان طول بعض الكثبان الرملية ستين مترًا وعلى مسافة عشرين مترًا، وكانت أشكالها تتغير دائمًا. وجعلتهم الرياح تتدحرج مثل موجات صفراء ضخمة. في الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي اسم "البحر الجاف" بلغتهم.

The dromedaries in the **caravan** moved slowly up and down the dunes, **swaying** like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty **wasteland** of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometres - no people, no plants, no water.

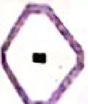
كانت الجمال في القافلة تتحرك ببطء لأعلى ولأسفل الكثبان الرملية، تتمايل مثل السفن الكبيرة فوق المحيط. ذهبوا نحو قرية لوب نور، آخر قرية قبل الأرض الجرداء الفارغة من الصحراء. علم ماركو أنه بعد هذا المكان، لم يكن هناك شيء لآلاف الكيلومترات - لا يوجد ناس ولا نباتات ولا ماء.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold - sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange **legends** about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert **wandered** there still....

لقد كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا. في النهار كان الجو شديد الحرارة، وليلًا كان الجو شديد البرودة - في بعض الأحيان كان هناك جليد. وواصلوا رحلتهم بهدوء ، ولكن غالبًا ما كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتًا غريبة ، مثل أصوات الغناء والطبول من مسافة بعيدة. كان هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة حول هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن الرحالة الذين فُقدوا منذ فترة طويلة في الصحراء لا يزالون يتجولون هناك ...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

قبل مغادرتهم لوب نور ، تأكد ماركو من حصولهم على ما يكفي من الطعام والماء للرجال والحيوانات لمدة شهر واحد. بعد ثلاثين يومًا بالضبط من السفر عبر تلك الأرض الفارغة المخيفة ، رأوا أخيرًا الخط الأخضر لواحة نوح في الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا طعام متبقي وكانت الحيوانات منهكة ، لكن مغامرتهم في الصحراء انتهت. كانوا في الصين!



Read again and answer the questions.

1. What was the name the local people called this desert?

....

2. What moved like big ships over the ocean?

....

3. What was the weather like there?

....

4. What was strange about the wind?

....

5. How long were they in the desert?

THE MYSTERIOUS ISLAND

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

mysterious island	الجزيرة الغامضة	cabin	كابينة - مقصورة	relaxing	مُريح
port	ميناء	excited	متحمس	boring	ممل
captain	قبطان "سفينة - طائرة"	sleep	نوم	small	صغير الحجم
exciting	شيق - رائع	hope	أمل - يأمل	terrible	رهيب / فظيع

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

palm trees	أشجار / النخيل	island	جزيرة	candle	شمعة
sandy	كثير الرمال	strong wind	رياح شديدة	quite	إلى حد ما
long walks	مشي لمسافات طويلة	mountains	جبال	possible	محتمل
telescope	تيلسكوب (منظار فلكي)	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	center	منتصف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
seem	يبدو	seemed	seemed
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
read	يقرأ	read	read
say	يقول	said	said

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come up	تشرق	in my heart	بداخلي
a bit clearer	أكثر وضوحا	around the ship	في جوانب السفينة
with no wind	بلا رياح "هادئة"	to pass the time	لقضاء الوقت
have breakfast	يتناول وجبة الإفطار	in the evening	في المساء
sad and down	حزين ومحبط	for pleasure	من أجل المتعة
during the day	أثناء النهار	by a light of candle	على ضوء شمعة



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

THE MYSTERIOUS ISLAND

الجزيرة الغامضة

Day 1 January 17th

Today was a long, boring day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible. I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at island center. It's exciting to imagine what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

كان اليوم يومًا مملًا وطويلًا و ذو طقس رهيب. لم تغادر السفينة الميناء، لذلك لم تكن رحلتي إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة . أستطيع رؤية الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بي. كانت الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية وبها العديد من أشجار النخيل وهناك جبال خضراء في وسطها. من المثير تخيل ما استطعت أن أجده هناك. أنا متأكد من أنني سأسافر إلى هناك قريبًا.

Day 2 January 19th

I was sad and down all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer - there is some hope for my journey, perhaps - but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

كنت حزينًا ومحبطًا طوال يوم أمس. ما زال الطقس سيء وكان هناك رياح شديدة. قمت بالتمشية لمسافات طويلة في أرجاء السفينة لقضاء الوقت خلال اليوم. في المساء، لم يكن لدي ما أفعله سوى قراءة كتابي على ضوء الشموع في مقصورتي الصغيرة. اليوم السماء أكثر صفاءً قليلًا - ربما هناك بعض الامل لرحلتي - لكن يبدو أن الوقت يمر ببطء شديد في هذا المكان.

Day 3 January 21st

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

نلت قسطًا مريحًا من النوم في مقصورتي الليلة الماضية، وهذا الصباح تناولت وجبة الإفطار مع الآخرين على متن السفينة. في فترة ما بعد الظهر ، كانت هناك أخبار جيدة من القبطان: يقول غدًا الطقس سيكون جيدًا وبدون رياح ، لذلك سنتمكن من الذهاب إلى الجزيرة في الصباح. سوف تغادر السفينة عندما تشرق الشمس. أنا متحمس جدًا: قريبًا يمكنني استكشاف الجزيرة الغامضة!

A) Answer the following questions.

1. How does the writer feel? ....
2. How can the writer see the island? ....

B) Complete the following.

3. At the center of the island, there are ....
4. The island has .... beaches with many ....

Lesson (3) Part (C)

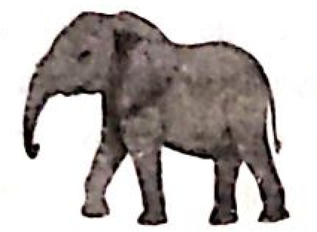
PRONUNCIATION

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر، و استمع وردد.

/dʒ/ sound

huge
ضخم



fridge
ثلاجة



/ʒ/ sound

measure
يقيس



treasure
كنز



Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

/dʒ/				/ʒ/	
language	لغة	damage	يدمر	usually	عادة
age	عمر	village	قرية	leisure	فراغ
joke	نكتة	arrange	يرتب	Asia	أسيا
cage	قفص	dangerous	خطير	television	تليفزيون
bridge	جسر / كوبرى	Japan	اليابان	pleasure	سعادة / سرور

Listen, read and repeat.

استمع، و اقرأ وردد.

1. The bridge in the village is damaged and dangerous.
2. On television, they said that in Asia they found too much treasure to measure.
3. Jerry just arranged to send his luggage to Japan.
4. I usually play games for leisure and pleasure.



Help your child identify the sounds /dʒ/ and /ʒ/
ساعد طفلك ...

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Today was a long .... day with terrible weather.
   a) interesting b) amazing c) boring d) beautiful
2. The .... didn't leave the port.
   a) plane b) ship c) train d) bus
3. I can see the island through my ....
   a) telescope b) microscope c) glasses d) telephone
4. There are .... mountains at the island's center.
   a) yellow b) blue c) brown d) green

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Marco Polo went into the Gobi ....
   a) Garden b) Park c) Desert d) Pool
2. He was fascinated .... the sand dunes.
   a) on b) by c) at d) in
3. The local people called the Gobi Desert "the .... sea".
   a) wet b) mud c) dry d) cool
4. In the past, camels traveled in a ....
   a) truck b) lorry c) caravan d) ship
5. You can't find plants or water in the empty .... of the desert.
   a) wasteland b) green land c) band d) hand

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

legends - wandered - hot - caravan - noises

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling 1) ...., by night, it was freezing cold. The 2) .... went on silenty, but often the wind made strange 3) .... There were many 4) .... about this desert.



Read the text and answer the questions.

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275 he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Marco Polo went into the Gobi Desert in ....
   a) 1273 b) 1274 c) 1275 d) 1276
2. The word "fascinated" means ....
   a) tired b) relaxed c) interested d) bored
3. Marco Polo was fascinated by the ....
   a) sky b) mountains c) sand dunes d) sea

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How old was Marco Polo when he went into the Gobi Desert? ....
5. What did the local people call the Gobi Desert? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. play - pleasure - I - usually - games - for - .

....

2. ship - the port - The - leave - didn't - .

....

3. was - What - about - strange - wind - the - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- he's bored because the ship can t leave.

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Gobi Desert

Guiding elements:

(day - hot - night - cold - legend)

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING PROJECT

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

mood	المزاج العام - الحالة المزاجية	features	سمات - مميزات
opinion	رأي	on a single day	في يوم واحد
traditional	تقليدي	route	مسار - طريق
skills	مهارات	magical	سحري
informal	غير رسمي	sailing boat	قارب شرعي
felucca	فلوكة - مركب شراعي	on the River Nile	في نهر النيل

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

amazing	مدهش	arrows	أسهم
beautifully	بطريقة جميلة	on board	على متن السفينة
Great Pyramid	الهرم الأكبر	oud	آلة العود
sail	شراع	awesome = wonderful	رائع
gently	بلطف		

Definitions تعريفات

skills	the ability to deal with something well	مهارات
sails	a large piece of cloth on a boat that makes the wind push the boat	أشرعة
magical	very enjoyable and exciting	سحري

Adjectives & Adverbs

- Adjectives and adverbs help us to understand the feelings of the writer.
- Words like "amazing, wonderful and delicious" show that the writer is happy.
- Words like "slowly, gently and beautifully" show the way the action is done.
- Adjectives describe nouns "tall man". الصفة تصف الاسم
- Adverbs describe verbs "moved gently". الحال يصف الفعل

Adjectives صفات

amazing	مذهل	lovely	رائع	white	أبيض
tall	طويل	incredible	لا يصدق	quiet	هادئ
difficult	صعب	awesome	رائع	peaceful	مسالم - هادئ
strong	قوي	huge	ضخم	magical	سحري / مثير
warm	دافئ	delicious	لذيذ	relaxing	مسترخ - مريح

e.g. Sara is beautiful.

Adverbs (ends "ly") ظروف أحوال

slowly	ببطء	gently	بلطف / برفق	beautifully	بطريقة جميلة

e.g. She sings beautifully.



Features of diary writing سمات كتابة مفكرة

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.
تحتوي المفكرة على خصائص مختلفة عن أنواع النص الأخرى.

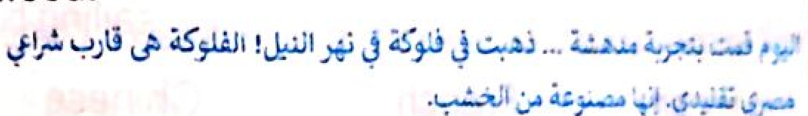
- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.
عادة ما تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة ، كل فقرة تكون عن ما حدث في يوم واحد.
- It is written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc).
تكتب بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (I ، we ، my ، إلخ).
- It describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.
تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.
- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.
عادة ما تصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب الحياتية.

Lessons (4 & 5)

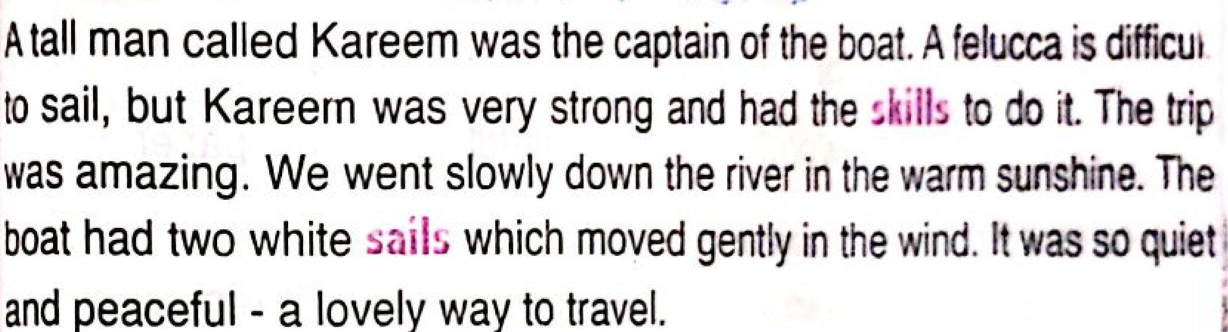
Listen and read. استمع

6 January — A trip down the Nile

Today I had an amazing experience ... I went on a *felucca* on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.



اليوم قمت بتجربة مدهشة ... ذهبت في فلوكة في نهر النيل! الفلوكة هي قارب شراعي مصري تقليدي. إنها مصنوعة من الخشب.



A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the **skills** to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white **sails** which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful - a lovely way to travel.

كان قبطان القارب رجلًا طويل القامة يدعى كريم. من الصعب الإبحار بالفلوكة ، لكن كريم كان قويًا جدًا ولديه المهارات اللازمة للقيام بذلك. كانت الرحلة مدهشة. ذهبنا ببطء في النهر تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة. كان للقارب شراعان أبيضان يتحركان برفق مع الرياح. كان الجو هادئا للغاية - إنها طريقة جميلة وهادئة للسفر.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء المذهلة على طول الطريق أيضا. رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة في حياتي. كانت رائعة! كانت الأهرامات ضخمة وكانت الحجارة بلون الذهب. الهرم الأكبر، أطول الأهرامات الثلاثة ، يبلغ ارتفاعه ١٤٧ مترا. لقد كان أمرًا رائعًا.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was **magical**, and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

في فترة ما بعد الظهر ، تناولنا وجبة غداء لذيذة على متن الفلوكة وكان هناك رجل يعزف الموسيقى المصرية التقليدية على آلة العود. كان يعزف بشكل جميل وكانت الموسيقى ساحرة ومريحة. يا له من يوم! لقد قمت بتجربة رائعة!

- Answer the following questions.

1. What is a felucca?

....

2. Describe the captain of the boat.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I went on a .... on the River Nile.
   a) boat b) ship c) train d) felucca
2. A felucca is a traditional .... sailing boat.
   a) Egyptian b) American c) French d) Chinese
3. The felucca is made of ....
   a) glass b) wood c) metal d) paper
4. The trip was ....
   a) boring b) awful c) bad d) amazing

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I had an amazing .... I went on a rollercoaster.
   a) price b) experience c) prince d) experiment
2. I went on a .... on the River Nile.
   a) car b) bus c) felucca d) train
3. The pyramids were ....
   a) bad b) ugly c) dirty d) awesome
4. The music was .... and relaxing.
   a) magical b) bad c) noisy d) dirty

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

magical - felucca - sails - skills - trip

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A 1) .... is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the 2) .... to do it. The 3) .... was amazing. The boat had two white 4) .... which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful - a lovely way to travel.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last Friday, I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A felucca is difficult to sail, but the captain was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. We stopped to see some incredible things along the way.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word " difficult" means ....
   a) **hard** b) **easy** c) **good** d) **wonderful**
2. We went slowly down the .... in the warm sunshine.
   a) **lake** b) **sea** c) **river** d) **ocean**
3. The felucca is made of ....
   a) **glass** b) **wood** c) **metal** d) **paper**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did you go on a trip? ....
5. How was the captain? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - made - A felucca - wood - of - .

....

2. two - The boat - had - sails - white - .

....

3. a delicious - We - lunch - had - the felucca - board - on - .

....

6 Write a diary entry about " Your last trip":

Guiding elements:

(How and when you went there - What the weather was like - Describe the place - Your feelings / mood when you were there)

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

A great explorer

Marco Polo was a great explorer. He was Italian. He was one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. He rode a camel all the way to China.

A surprising discovery

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.

A diary entry about a trip

December 30

Today, I went to the pyramids by bus. The weather was sunny and it was a nice day. The place was cool and interesting. I saw a lot of tourists. They were fascinated by the pyramids. They liked riding camels and horses.
I was very happy. I spent the day talking to most of them. It was an enjoyable day. I had such a wonderful time!

Vocabulary

explorer	مستكشف	felucca	فلوكة
journey	رحلة طويلة	caravan	قافلة
voyage	رحلة بحرية	swaying	يتأرجح
museum	متحف	wasteland	أرض جرداء
experiences	تجارب حياتية	sail	شراع
adventure	مغامرة	clay	طين / صلصال
fascinated by	منبهر ب	legend	أسطورة
dromedary	جمل ذو سنام واحد	tools	أدوات
discovery	اكتشاف	objects	أشياء
diary entry	يوميات	mystery	لغز / سر غامض

Pronunciation

/dʒ/				/ʒ/	
language	لغة	damage	يدمر	usually	عادة
age	عمر	village	قرية	leisure	فراغ
joke	نكتة	arrange	يرتب	Asia	آسيا
cage	قفص	dangerous	خطير	television	تليفزيون
bridge	جسر / كوبرى	Japan	اليابان	pleasure	سعادة / سرور

Language

- Past simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط

- I played tennis yesterday.
- We didn't have a vacation last year.
- Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

متحف	....	مستكشف	....
خبرة / تجربة	....	إجازة	....
رحلة طويلة	....	مشهور	....
صعب	....	قديم جدا	....
يتذكر	....	قرن	....
متحف	....	جمل	....
رحلة قصيرة	....	رحلة بحرية	....
مغامرة	....	يوميات	....

Lesson (2)

أدوات	....	ثقافة	....
حضارة	....	طين / صلصال	....
لغز / سر غامض	....	قصات شعر	....
فأس	....	علماء آثار	....

Lesson (3)

يتمايل	....	منبهر بـ	....
أرض جرداء	....	جمل ذو سنام واحد	....
يتجول	....	قافلة	....
أسطورة	....	غامض	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

شراع	....	فلوكة	....
سحري	....	تقليدي	....
آلة العود	....	مهارات	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I had quite a .... sleep in my cabin last night.
   a) tiring b) boring c) frightening d) relaxing
2. This morning I had breakfast with others on the ....
   a) ship b) train c) bus d) car
3. Tomorrow the weather will be .... with no wind.
   a) bad b) rainy c) good d) snowy
4. I'm very ...., soon I can explore the mysterious island.
   a) tired b) bored c) excited d) sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To .... means to move from side to side.
   a) explore b) sleep c) sway d) go
2. Nok civilization made sculptures of humans from ....
   a) sand b) mud c) clay d) gold
3. Marco Polo was an Italian ....
   a) teacher b) explorer c) archaeologist d) scientist
4. I can explore the .... island.
   a) easy b) difficult c) mystery d) mysterious

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Italy - China - diary - explorer - camel

I read a book about Marco Polo. He was a great Italian 1) .... He was one of the first people from the West to visit 2) .... He went there in the 13th century. He wrote a 3) .... about his experiences. It's called the *Travels of Marco Polo.* He rode a 4) .... all the way to China.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco Polo made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Marco Polo made sure they had enough .... and water.
   a) flour b) flower c) food d) juice
2. They finally saw .... Oasis on the horizon.
   a) Nour b) Noah c) Nile d) Nok
3. The opposite of the underlined word " Before" is ....
   a) After b) Above c) On d) At

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How long did the food and water last? ....
5. How were the animals? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. travel - did - How - there - you - ?

   ....
2. Museum - visiting - Marco Polo - I - was - .

   ....
3. a diary - experiences - He - about - wrote - his - .

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Last week, I .... (go) to Cairo on vacation.
2. Seif .... (be) angry with his brother yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

- i went to dahab with my family. ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: A vacation to Dahab

(last week - family - bus - beach - camels - enjoyed - amazing)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Who - China - island - explorer - museum

Hamza : What are you doing, Tarek?
Tarek : I'm reading a book about an Italian 1) ....
Hamza : 2) .... is he?
Tarek : He is Marco Polo. There is a 3) .... for him.
Hamza : Where is it?
Tarek : It's on an 4) .... in Croatia called Korula.
Hamza : What did he do?
Tarek : He was one of the first people from the West to visit 5) ....



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

village - civilization - Local - humans - clay

Mariam : What was today's English lesson about?
Toka : It was about the Nok 1) ....
Mariam : Where is Nok?
Toka : It's a small 2) .... in Nigeria.
Mariam : How did we know about it?
Toka : 3) .... people found some unusual objects.
Mariam : What were these objects?
Toka : They were 4) .... sculptures of 5) ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1. train sail ship bus (..........)
2. complicated difficult interesting agree (..........)
3. cross sway wind roll (..........)
4. damage arrange measure explorer (..........)
5. imagine hoped traveled explored (..........)

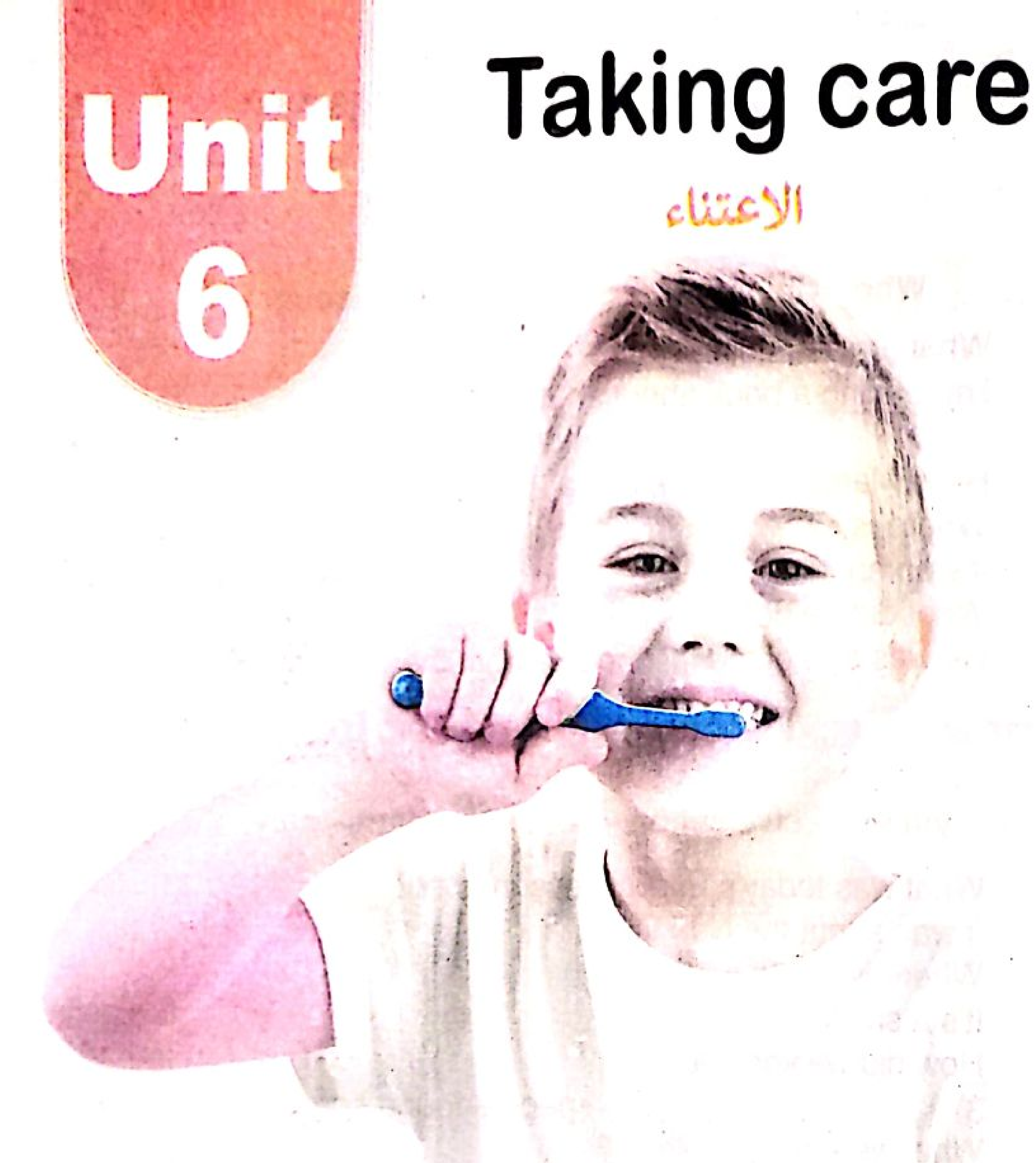
Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1. sail travel ride felucca (..........)
2. mystery archaeologists scientists explorers (..........)
3. boring port terrible mysterious (..........)
4. go swan saw did (..........)
5. use create study called (..........)

Unit 6

Taking care

الاعتناء



In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of one's self.

  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن صُنع الأشياء في المنزل وكيفية اعتناء الإنسان بنفسه.

- talk about quantities. يتكلم عن الكميات.
- find the meaning of words in a text. يجد معنى الكلمات في النص.
- learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.

  يتعلم عن العناية الشخصية في مصر القديمة.

- write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.

  يكتب التعليمات لصنع شيء ما وكميات المقادير.

- research and create a poster about different spices.

  يبحث ويبتكر ملصقًا عن التوابل المختلفة.

LET'S MAKE CANDLES!

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية


popsicle sticks
أعواد / عِصِي المصاصة


drops
قطرات


wax
شمع (خام)


wick
فتيلة


press
يضغط


squeeze
يعصر


heat
يسخن


stir
يُقلب / يحرك



instructions
تعليمات

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

palm wax	شمع النخيل	lemon oil	زيت الليمون	glass	كوب
really	حقًا	cotton rope	حبل قطني	enough	كافي
lollipop	مصاصة	ingredients	مكونات - مقادير	step	خطوة
Egyptian	مصري	flower petals	بتلات الزهور	lovely	رائع / جميل
inside	بداخل	perfume oil	زيت عطري	salt	ملح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed	squeezed
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed
stir	يقلب / يحرك	stirred	stirred
heat	يُسخن	heated	heated
melt	يذوب / يذيب	melted	melted

Help your child identify these words.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
make	يصنع	made	made
smell	يشم (له رائحة)	smelt	smelt
say	يقول	said	said
take	يأخذ	took	taken
hold	يمسك	held	held

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a gram of	جرام من	drops of	قطرات من
need for	يحتاج لـ	take about	يأخذ حوالي
smell lovely	رائحته جميلة	on the tops of	أعلى
take .... off the cooker	يرفع ... من على الموقد	read them out	يقرأ بصوت عال
How much	كم الكمية	hold up	يثبت
in mind	في الذهن	press on	يضغط على

Did you know ?



When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt, and makes it look shiny and healthy.

عندما تمشط شعرك، فإن هذا ينشر الزيوت الطبيعية من بشرتك عبر شعرك من الجذور إلى الأطراف. وهذا يحمي شعرك من الحرارة والأتربة، ويجعله يبدو لامعًا وصحيًا.



Tip!

When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, *kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.*

عندما تستمع للكميات ، تذكر الاستماع / البحث عن الأرقام وكلمات عن وحدات القياس. على سبيل المثال ، كيلو جرام، جرام، لتر، ملليلتر، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.

Help your child identify these words.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

What do Laila and her mom make?

Mom : Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?

أهلاً يا ليلى. أنا أحب عمل الأشياء. لما لا نقوم بعمل شيء جديد؟

Laila : That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

هذه فكرة رائعة. هل لديك شيء في ذهنك؟

Mom : I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.

عندي زيت عطري يمكننا استخدامه لصنع الشموع.

Laila : Candles? Wow! I love it!

الشموع؟ رائع! أنا أحب ذلك!

Mom : Here are the **instructions**. Can you read them out to me?

ها هي التعليمات. هل يمكنك قراءتها لي؟

Laila : Right. First, we need some **wax**.

حسنًا. أولاً، نحن بحاجة إلى بعض الشمع.

Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

ها هو. إنه شمع النخيل من النخيل المصري. إنها تصنع شموعًا جميلة حقًا. كم الكمية التي نحتاجها؟

Laila : It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

تقول: "استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لصنع ثلاث شموع."

Mom : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

حسنًا، يوجد حوالي 500 جرام هنا. هذا يكفي. ماذا بعد؟

Laila We need some perfume oil.

نحن بحاجة إلى بعض الزيت العطري

Mom : Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm ... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

هنا هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون. إمم .... رائحتهم جميلة. كم كمية الزيت العطري التي نحتاج إليها؟

Laila : The instructions say, "**Squeeze** in about 40 **drops** of oil."

تقول التعليمات: "اعصر حوالي 40 قطرة من الزيت".

Mom : Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and **press** them on the tops of the candles.

حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخذ حوالي 15 زهرة ونضغطها على قمم الشموع.

Laila : Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one **wick** – that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

نعم، فكرة جيدة. ثم نحتاج إلى كأس واحد لكل شمعة وفتيل واحد - وهو حبل القطن الصغير الموجود داخل الشمعة.

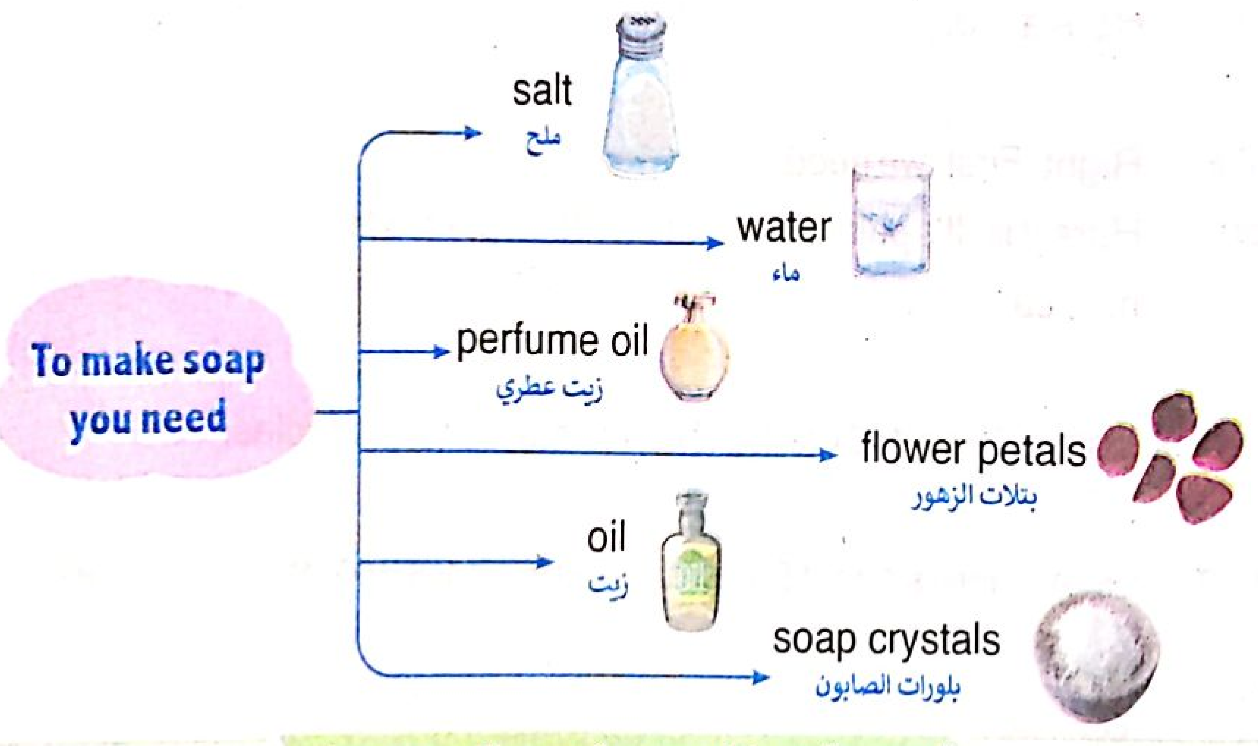
Mom : Oh, yes. And we need some **popsicle sticks** to hold the wicks up in the glasses. أوه، نعم. ونحن بحاجة إلى بعض أعواد المصاصة لتثبيت الفتائل في الكؤوس.

Laila : So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

إذن هذه ثلاثة كؤوس، وثلاث فتائل، وثلاثة أعواد مصاصات، تمام؟ والآن، ما الذي يتعين علينا فعله أولاً؟

Mom : Let's see ... "Step one: **Heat** the wax to melt it, then **stir** it well."

دعونا نرى... "الخطوة الأولى: قومي بتسخين الشمع حتى يذوب ثم حركيه جيداً."



Instructions for making "soap"

1. Put the ingredients for your soap in a **bowl**. ١- ضع مكونات الصابون الذي ستصنعه في إناء (وعاء).
2. **Heat** the ingredients on a cooker. ٢- قم بتسخين المكونات على الموقد.
3. Next, **stir** the ingredients with a wooden spoon. ٣- قم بتقليب المكونات بملعقة خشبية.
4. Take the ingredients off the cooker. ٤- ارفع المكونات من على الموقد.
5. When the ingredients are hard and cool, **press** them into a soap container. ٥- عندما تكون المكونات صلبة وباردة، قم بضغطهم في وعاء خاص بالصابون.
6. You can **add** flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely. ٦- يمكنك إضافة بتلات الزهور لتجعل شكل ورائحة الصابون رائعة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Laila reads the instructions for making ....
   a) candles b) food c) oil d) salt
2. She thinks she needs ....
   a) salt b) water c) wax d) soap
3. She also needs some .... oil.
   a) flower b) crystals c) water d) perfume
4. She heats the wax to melt it, then .... it well.
   a) burn b) collect c) stir d) form

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We .... lemon to make lemon juice.
   a) stir b) squeeze c) melt d) heat
2. Use some popsicle .... to hold the wicks up in the glasses.
   a) sticks b) pens c) stickers d) ropes
3. We need .... petals for making soap.
   a) wax b) flower c) stones d) popsicle
4. A wick is the little .... rope inside the candle.
   a) metal b) cotton c) plastic d) stone

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

lovely - spoon - wax - perfume oil - candles

To make the candles. First, we need some 1) .... We can use palm wax. We use 450 grams of wax to make three 2) .... We also need some 3) .... You can use lemon oil. It smells 4) .... Squeeze about 40 drops of the oil.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Here are the instructions for making soap. To make soap, you need salt, water, soap crystals, oil, perfume oil and flower petals. First, We put the ingredients for our soap in a bowl. Then, we heat the ingredients on a cooker. Next, we stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon. We take the ingredients off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and cool, we press them into a soap container. Finally, we can add flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is "making ...."
   a) perfume b) candles c) soap d) oil
2. The underlined word "lovely" means ....
   a) beautiful b) ugly c) bad d) awful
3. We take the ingredients off the cooker, when the ingredients are ....
   a) liquid b) gas c) hard d) soft

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are the ingredients of soap? ....
5. How do we stir the ingredients? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. oil - need - We - some - perfume - .
2. do - need - What - we - do - first - to - ?

6 Punctuate the following.

- what does laila make?

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Making candles

(wax - palm trees - perfume oil - heat - melt)

Help your child deal with such questions

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

arley	شعير	preserve	يحفظ	flood	فيضان
estivals	احتفالات	paintings	رسومات	herbs	أعشاب

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

egetables	خضروات	dates	بلح / تمر	spices	توابل
eese	أوز	figs	تين	lentils	عدس
heat	قمح	rich	غني	essence	مستخلص
sweet	حلو المذاق	vanilla	فانيليا	cream	قشدة
oney	عسل	jars	برطمانات / جرار	garlic	ثوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
aste	يتذوق	tasted	tasted
eep	يحفظ	kept	kept
row	يزرع	grew	grown
epend on	يعتمد على	depended on	depended on
ry	يجفف	dried	dried

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

epend on	يعتمد على	last for	يدوم لمدة	take care of	يعتني بـ
ome from	يأتي من	the Nile floods	فيضانات النيل	at this time	في هذا الوقت

Definitions تعريفات

arley a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things
شعير

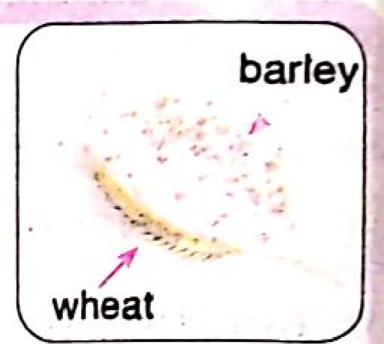
estivals a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food
احتفالات / مهرجانات

erbs plants with a strong taste often used in cooking
أعشاب

... make it last for longer
يحفظ

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

تظهر لوحات المصريين القدماء أن الناس في هذا الوقت كانوا يعتنون بأجسادهم ويأكلون جيدًا! فماذا كان يأكل ويشرب المصريون القدماء؟

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

لقد ساعدت مياه النيل دائمًا المزارعين المصريين على زراعة الكثير من الفواكه والخضروات. في هذا الوقت، كانت الخضروات التي يمكنهم زراعتها تعتمد في كثير من الأحيان على كمية المياه القادمة من فيضانات النيل. عادة ما كان المزارعون المصريون القدماء يزرعون البصل والثوم والعدس والفاصوليا، وكان الناس يطهون كل هذه الخضروات. كما قام المزارعون بزراعة القمح والشعير. استخدمه الناس لصنع الخبز وكانوا يأكلون الكثير منه كل يوم.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

كان معظم الناس في مصر القديمة يأكلون القليل من اللحوم فقط، عادة في المهرجانات. من المحتمل أنهم كانوا يأكلون القليل من الأسماك والطيور مثل البط والإوز والدجاج. كما أكلوا بعض البيض والجبن من الأبقار أو الماعز.

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

كان هناك الكثير من النحل في مصر القديمة، وهذا يعني أنه كان هناك عسل! غالبًا استخدم الناس العسل مع الخبز والقشدة لصنع الكعك. كما استخدموا أيضًا القليل من التمر أو التين لصنع مشروبات الفاكهة الحلوة.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

كما عرفت بعض العائلات كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لتحسين مذاق طبخها، كما عرفت أيضًا كيفية حفظ الطعام. على سبيل المثال، كانوا يجففون الأسماك أو يستخدمون الملح لحفظها، ويستخدمون الجرار لحفظ الفواكه والخضروات لفصل الشتاء.

Language Focus

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد

Countable nouns الأسماء التي تعد

.They are nouns that can be singular or plural.

الأسماء التي تعد: هي التي لها صيغة مفرد وجمع، ويُسبق المفرد بـ a/an.

:boy → boys   an egg → eggs   a child → children

Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد

.They are nouns that have no plural form.

الأسماء التي لا تعد: هي التي ليس لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولا تُسبق بـ a/an. .

-tea - sugar - oil - grass - time - money - bread - traffic - homework

• Read and write C (countable) or U (uncountable).

1. sugar	2. mango	3. traffic ....
4. store	5. oil	6. student ....
7. money	8. ticket	9. homework ....
10. juice	11. cow	12. honey ....

How many / How much

1 How many كم عدد

How many + plural countable noun اسم جمع معدود ...?

·We use it to ask about quantities of countable things.

تُستخدم للسؤال عن مقدار الأشياء المعدودة.

(leaves - lemons - cars - people)..

·How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

To reply, we use: للرد نستخدم:

1) a number (a / an / one / five / etc..). عدد

e.g. We need five lemons.

2) or approximate amount (some - a few - a lot of). مقدار تقريبي

e.g. We need a few lemons.



2 How much كم للكمية



How much + uncountable noun اسم لا يعد ...?

- We use it to ask about quantities of uncountable things.

نُستخدم للسؤال عن مقدار الأشياء التي لا تعد.

(tea - sugar - oil - grass)

e.g. How much oil do we need?

- To reply we use only an approximate amount.

(some / a little / a lot of). للإجابة نستخدم فقط كمية تقريبية.

e.g. We need a little oil.





- Complete the mini-dialogs with How much or How many.

1) **Hani** : .... milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?
Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks, Hani.

2) **Fareeda** : .... students are there in your English class, Dalia?
Dalia : There are about forty, I think.

3) **Sherif** : .... math problems did you do yesterday?
Karim : Just a few. They were difficult!

4) **Rana** : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?
Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.

5) **Hana** : .... honey do we have, Ayman?
Ayman : We have a lot. See the jar on the left.

Help your child talk about quantities.

ساعد طفلك أن يتكلم عن الكميات.

Quantifiers
محددات الكميات

a + singular noun (اسم مفرد)
نستخدم "a" قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بصوت ساكن.

a book - a car - a dog

an + singular noun (اسم مفرد)

نستخدم "an" قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بصوت متحرك والحروف المتحركة هي (a - e - i - o - u).

an apple - an ice cream - an egg - an orange - an umbrella

some بعض
نستخدم "some" في الجملة المثبتة (مع الأسماء التي تعد أو لا تعد).

I have some books. - I have some rice.

تأتي "some" في سؤال العرض والطلب.

Can I have some apples? (طلب)

Would you like some tea? (عرض)

any أي
نستخدم "any" في السؤال والنفي (مع الأسماء التي تعد أو لا تعد).

Do you have any books? - I don't have any books.

Do you have any rice? - I don't have any rice.

a few + plural noun (اسم جمع) قليل
نستخدم "a few" مع الأسماء التي تعد.

They have a few bags.

a little + uncountable noun (اسم لا يعد) قليل
نستخدم "a little" مع الأسماء التي لا تعد.

He drank a little milk.

a lot of + (اسم لا يعد) **or** (اسم جمع) الكثير من

نستخدم "a lot of" مع الأسماء الجمع أو اسم لا يعد في الاثبات.

I have a lot of books / sugar.

I have a lot of pens / milk.

There is + singular noun (اسم مفرد) **/ uncountable noun** (اسم لا يعد) يوجد للمفرد

There is a store in our street. (اثبات)

There isn't any sugar. (نفي)

Is there any rice in the bag? (سؤال)

There are + plural noun (اسم جمع) (يوجد للجمع)

- There are some girls from Luxor in my class. (اثبات)
- There aren't any tigers in Egypt. (نفي)
- Are there any lemons? (سؤال)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Please hurry. We don't have .... time.
   a) much b) a few c) too many d) many
2. Can I have .... sugar in my coffee, please?
   a) a few b) a little c) few d) many
3. There isn't .... bread in the bag.
   a) some b) a c) any d) an
4. There are .... of lemons in the fridge.
   a) a lot b) a little c) much d) little
5. How .... candles does 450 grams of wax make?
   a) often b) long c) much d) many
6. How .... cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?
   a) long b) often c) many d) much

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I have .... (a few) sugar.
2. There isn't .... (some) milk.
3. How .... (much) books do you have?
4. How .... (many) oil do you need?
5. There are .... (a little) apples.
6. There isn't .... (some) money.
7. How many .... (pen) do you have?
8. I have .... (an) pencil.
9. Is there .... (some) honey left in the jar?
10. Please, get me .... (any) fruit.

Help your child talk about quantities.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians ate ....
   a) badly b) quickly c) hungrily d) well
2. There were a lot of .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a) bees b) dogs c) cats d) cows
3. People often used .... with bread and cream to make cakes.
   a) salt b) honey c) herbs d) oil
4. They used a few .... or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.
   a) peaches b) bananas c) dates d) apples

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians took .... of their bodies and ate well.
   a) care b) car c) help d) carry
2. Farmers grew wheat and ....
   a) bare b) barley c) carley d) harley
3. Most people in Ancient Egypt ate a little meat, usually at ....
   a) banks b) schools c) parks d) festivals
4. Some families also knew how to use spices and ....
   a) plants b) verbs c) herbs d) harp
5. Some families dried fish or used salt to .... it
   a) spoil b) surf c) serve d) preserve
6. .... are plants with a strong taste often used in cooking.
   a) Herbs b) Festivals c) Barley d) Preserve
7. How .... salt do we need?
   a) much b) many c) long d) often
8. How .... lemons do we need?
   a) much b) many c) long d) often
9. How much .... do we need in this tea?
   a) apples b) cars c) sugar d) books

10. How .... tickets do you need?
    a) long b) often c) much d) many
11. How .... money do you want?
    a) many b) much c) long d) often
12. There's .... oil.
    a) a few b) a little c) many d) a lot
13. There is .... of traffic.
    a) a few b) few c) a lot d) many
14. Are there .... lemons?
    a) some b) a c) an d) any
15. There are .... girls from Cairo in my class.
    a) some b) a c) an d) any
16. There aren't .... tigers in Egypt.
    a) some b) a c) an d) any
17. Are there .... apples?
    a) some b) an c) a d) any
18. How .... rice do you need?
    a) long b) often c) many d) much
19. How .... brothers and sisters do you have?
    a) many b) much c) long d) often
20. I have .... of money.
    a) a b) an c) a lot d) some

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

honey - well - fish - herbs - preserve

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies. They ate very 1) .... Some families knew how to use spices and 2) .... to make their cooking better, and they also knew how to 3) .... food. They dried 4) .... or used salt to preserve it.



Read the text and answer the questions.

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well. Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables and fruits. They used wheat and barley to make bread. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat. They probably ate a few fish and birds. They also ate some eggs and cheese. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks. Some families used spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "Ancient" means very ....
   a) new b) old c) young d) modern
2. They used honey with bread and cream to make ....
   a) fish b) drinks c) cheese d) cakes
3. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make bread.
   a) flower b) wheat c) eggs d) honey

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did Ancient Egyptians use to make their cooking taste better? ....
5. How did we know that Ancient Egyptians eat well? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. barley - wheat - Farmers - and - grew - .

   ....

2. spices - used - They - herbs - and - cooking - in - .

   ....

3. well - ate - Ancient - Egyptians - .

   ....

4. ate - a little - People - at - meat - festivals - .

   ....

5. pens - many - How - pencils - and - we - do - have - ?

   ....

many How we do need ?

....

I have Can sugar a little my in coffee - ?

....

grams of We need 400 chicken - .

....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

Is there .... (some) rice?

There is .... (any) milk.

How .... (much) books do you have?

How .... (many) oil do you need?

There are .... (a little) apples in the fridge.

There is .... (a few) sugar left here.

.... (Is) there any lemons?

.... (Are) there any rice?

We have .... (a little) eggs.

How .... (many) money do you need?

Punctuate the following.

ancient egyptians ate well

....

Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Cooking in Ancient Egypt

...ing elements:

... herbs - taste - preserve - dried - jars - fruit)

STORY: THE MISSING KING

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

caretakers	القائمون على الرعاية - مشرفين	lean	يميل / يتكئ على	crown	تاج
throne	عرش "الملك - الملكة"	palace	قصر	astonished	مندهش - مذهول
scepter	الصولجان "عصا الملك"	dust	تراب / غبار	waste	مخلفات

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

paintings	لوحات / رسومات	missing	مفقود	surprised	مندهش / متفاجئ
royal	ملكي	precious	ثمين - نفيس	mysterious	غامض / مبهم
carpet	سجادة	otherwise	من ناحية أخرى / وإلا	strange	غريب
prince - princess	أمير - أميرة	interesting	شيق	statues	تماثيل
curtains	ستائر	dangerously	بشكل خطير	furniture	أثاث منزلي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
lean	يميل / يتكئ	leaned	leaned
knock	يطرق (الباب)	knocked	knocked
hurry	يسرع	hurried	hurried
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
damage	يتلف	damaged	damaged
fetch	يحضر / يجلب	fetched	fetched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
get out	يخرج	got out	got out

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

explain to	يشرح لـ	need to	يحتاج إلى
put on	يرتدي / يلبس	at once	في الحال
look behind	ينظر خلف	hurry back	يسرع عائدا
wash the dust off	ينظف التراب من على	lean towards	يميل تجاه
jump down from	يقفز من	get out of	يخرج من
look carefully at	ينظر بعناية نحو	come out	يخرج
knock on	يطرق على	make sure	يتأكد
in danger	في خطر	look after	يعتني بـ
fall on	يسقط على	Be quiet	إهدأ

Definitions تعريفات

caretakers (n)	people who look after and clean a building	القائمون على الرعاية
leaning	to bend or move from a vertical position	يميل
astonished (adj)	very surprised	مندهش
dust (n)	a powder that is made of very small pieces of sand, earth, etc.	تراب / غبار

Tip!

1. You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words.

يمكنك استخدام الصور في القصة لمساعدتك على فهم الكلمات الجديدة.

2. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it.

يمكنك أيضا إلقاء نظرة على الكلمات المحيطة بكلمة غير معروفة في النص لمساعدتك على فهمها.

For example,

Is there an article (a/an/the) before the word, or an adjective?
If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

على سبيل المثال، هل هناك أداة (the/an/a) قبل كلمة أو صفة؟ إذا كان هناك، فهو اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك إلقاء نظرة على الجمل المحيطة به والتفكير في ما يمكن أن يعنيه الاسم في السياق.

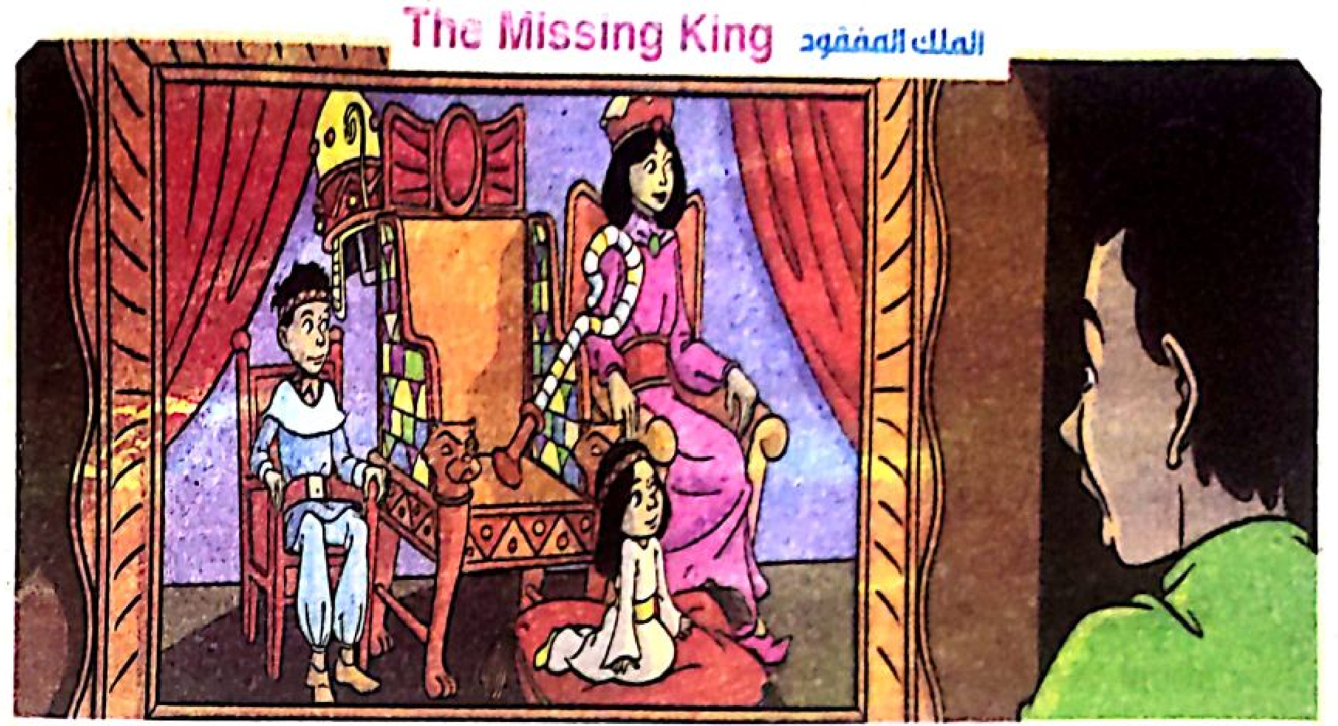
Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

The Missing King الملك المفقود



1 Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the **caretakers**. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things - old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

يعيش بيتر في قصر كبير حيث يقوم والديه برعايته. القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش هناك الآن. يحب بيتر استكشاف الغرف. فهي مليئة بالأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام والثمينة - اللوحات القديمة والتماثيل والسجاد والأثاث.

2 One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the **throne** with a **crown** on his head and a long **scepter** in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess - are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!

في أحد الأيام، لاحظ بيتر شيئًا غريبًا بشأن اللوحة الكبيرة في غرفة الطعام. عادة، تظهر هذه اللوحة الملونة أحد الملوك القدامى جالسًا على العرش ومعه تاج على رأسه وصولجان طويل في يده. الملكة والأبناء الملكيين - الأمير والأميرة - بجانبه. لكن اليوم مكان الملك في اللوحة فارغ: إنه مفقود!

3 Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is **leaning** dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once.

يتفاجأ بيتر وينظر بعناية إلى اللوحة مرة أخرى. يمكنه رؤية التاج والصولجان، ولكن ليس الملك. كما أن الصولجان يميل بشكل خطير على رأس الأميرة. يعلم بيتر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك في الحال!

4 He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is **astonished**. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the **dust** off me. Dust damages the painting, so I simply had to have a bath."

يمر بيتر عبر جميع الغرف في القصر. ينظر خلف الأبواب والستائر. وأخيراً وصل إلى الحمام الملكي. يسمع الغناء ويقرع الباب. "من هذا؟" يقول الملك. "الرجاء الهدوء! أنا أستمتع بحمام ساخن! بيتر مندهش. عندما خرج الملك قال له: أقضي سنين جالسًا في هذه اللوحة ولا يأتي أحد ليزيل الغبار عني. الغبار يدمر اللوحة لذلك كان علي ببساطة أن أستحم.

5 Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.

يفهم بيتر لكنه يشرح للملك أن صولجانه على وشك السقوط على الأميرة. يقول الملك: "شكرا لك يا ولدي". "سوف أعود بسرعة. ولكن في المستقبل من فضلك نظف اللوحات الموجودة في القصر. وإلا فسوف يتضررون إلى الأبد! " وهو يسرع للعودة إلى اللوحة لالتقاط الصولجان.

6 Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

يقوم بيتر الآن بتنظيف جميع اللوحات الموجودة في القصر حتى لا تتضرر – وحتى لا يضطر أحد لترك لوحته ليقوم بالاستحمام الجيد!

Answer the questions:

1. What does the large painting in the dining room usually show?

....

2. What is missing from the painting today?

....

3. Why is the young princess in danger?

....

4. Where does Peter find the king?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Peter lives in a big .... where his parents are the caretakers.
   a) house b) home c) palace d) apartment
2. The palace is .... and no one lives there now.
   a) new b) old c) narrow d) far
3. A lot of the .... are closed and mysterious.
   a) gates b) books c) chairs d) rooms
4. Peter likes to .... the rooms.
   a) explore b) dust c) clean d) watch

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The king lives in a big ....
   a) cave b) palace c) home d) hut
2. Peter likes to .... the rooms.
   a) play b) eat c) explore d) miss
3. The rooms are full of .... and precious things.
   a) interest b) bad c) interesting d) small
4. The king usually sits on his ....
   a) throne b) place c) room d) desk
5. The king often has a .... on his head.
   a) clown b) sock c) wood d) crown
6. The king is holding a long .... in his hand.
   a) moon b) star c) scepter d) bag
7. The scepter is .... towards the head of the princess.
   a) reading b) playing c) buying d) leaning
8. He never comes late, so I'm .... why he is late.
   a) astonished b) empty c) royal d) ugly
9. My parents are the .... of the house.
   a) takers b) caretakers c) bakers d) farmers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

room - crown - empty - caretakers - painting

Peter lives in a palace His parents are the 1) .... One day Peter notices something strange about the big 2) .... in the dining room. Usually this colourful painting shows one of the old kings with a 3) .... on his head and a long scepter. But today, the king's place in the painting is 4) .... : he is missing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things - old paintings, statues, carpets and furniture. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Peter lives in a .... palace.
   a) small b) tiny c) little d) big
2. The king holds a long .... in his hand.
   a) crown b) throne c) scepter d) stick
3. The underlined word " precious" means ....
   a) cheap b) useless c) ugly d) valuable

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Peter live?
5. What are the rooms full of?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. in - lives - The king - palace - a big .
2. throne - The king - sits - his - on - .
3. need - won't - I - leave - to - my throne - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

CLIL: SOCIAL STUDIES

Key vocabulary

كلمات رئيسية


soap
صابون


shampoo
شامبو


hairbrush
فرشاة شعر


toothpaste
معجون أسنان


toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان


perfume
عطر


stick
عود / عصا


cinnamon
نبات القرفة


cardamom
الهيل (الحبهان)


incense
بخور


powder
مسحوق


cream
كريم

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

personal care	العناية الشخصية	paintings	لوحات - رسومات
products	منتجات	iris flower	زهرة السوسن
pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر	spices	توابل
a cone shape	شكل مخروط	rock salt	ملح صخري
pine	نبات الصنوبر	fire	نار
festival	مهرجان	mixture	خليط
common	شائع	fresh	منعش
mint candy	حلوى النعناع	kapet	كابت (نوع من أنواع العطور)

Fruit	فاكهة	Herbs	أعشاب	Spices	توابل	Minerals	معادن
orange	برتقال	mint	نعناع	cardamom	حبهان	copper	نحاس
melon	شمام - بطيخ	rosemary	إكليل الجبل	cinnamon	قرفة		
lemon	ليمون			salt	ملح		
				pepper	فلفل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
tie	يربط	tied	tied
rub	يحك / يدلك	rubbed	rubbed
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
heat	يسخن	heated	heated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
put	يضع	put	put
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

use for	يستخدم لـ	breath mint	علكة النعناع
made from	مصنوع من	mixed with	مخلوط بـ
tie to	يربط بـ	rub with	يفرك بـ
cut into	يقطع إلى		

Help your child identify these words
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

PERSONAL CARE IN THE PAST

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt! العديد من المنتجات التي نستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية استخدمت أولاً في مصر القديمة.

Perfumes: العطور:

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like **cardamom** and **cinnamon**. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a **cream**. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make **incense**. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

أحب المصريون القدماء العطور القوية. كان العطر الأكثر شعبية يسمى "كابيت". كان باهظ الثمن لأنه كان يحتوي على الكثير من المكونات والتي كان من الصعب العثور على بعضها. ولكن كان يحتوي أيضا على بعض الأعشاب الشائعة ، مثل إكليل الجبل والنعناع ، والتوابل مثل الحبهان والقرفة. كانت العطور الأرخص تصنع من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن ، ثم تمزج بالزيت لصنع كريم. أو قاموا بضغط المكونات الجافة في شكل مخروط لصنع البخور. في اللوحات المصرية القديمة ، يمكنك غالبا رؤية رجال ونساء يرتدون مخاريط العطور هذه على رؤوسهم في المهرجانات!

Toothpaste: معجون الأسنان:

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush - a **stick** with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were a mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry **powder** directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

لتنظيف أسنانهم ، استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان - عصا بها قطع صغيرة من ورق البردي مربوطة بها في أحد طرفيها. كانت مكونات معجون الأسنان عبارة عن نعناع وملح صخري وفلفل وزهور السوسن المجففة. وضعوا هذا المسحوق الجاف مباشرة على أسنانهم وفركوه بفرشاة أسنانهم.

Breath Mints: نعناع للنفس:

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.

للحفاظ على أفواههم منتعشة طوال اليوم ، صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع. قاموا بخلط القرفة والبطيخ وبذور الصنوبر وبعض المكسرات مع العسل. ثم قاموا بتسخين الخليط على النار ، وتركوه ليبرد ، وقطعوه إلى مربعات صغيرة من الحلوى.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong ....
   a) perfumes b) food c) spices d) candles
2. The most popular perfume was called ....
   a) capital b) handle c) kapet d) kettle
3. The kapet was .... because it had a lot of ingredients.
   a) cheap b) clean c) bad d) expensive
4. Kapet had a few common .... in it, like rosemary and mint.
   a) water b) flowers c) herbs d) perfume

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved .... perfumes.
   a) simple b) strong c) weak d) lazy
2. The most popular perfume was called ....
   a) cat b) kapet c) captain d) carpet
3. Rosemary and mint are kinds of ....
   a) herbs b) spices c) pepper d) minerals
4. Cardamom and cinnamon are kinds of ....
   a) minerals b) herbs c) spices d) fruit
5. The Ancient Egyptians used a .... to clean their teeth.
   a) sick b) stick c) pick d) sack
6. Many of the products we use today for personal .... were first used in Ancient Egypt.
   a) bare b) care c) fair d) hair
7. Copper is a type of ....
   a) fruit b) herbs c) spices d) minerals
8. Kapet was .... because it had a lot of ingredients.
   a) cheap b) expensive c) simple d) free
9. The Ancient Egyptians made .... candies to have breath mints.
   a) tea b) mint c) sweet d) sour

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

mint - sand - powder - toothbrush - papyrus

Many of the products we used today for personal care were first sed in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used a type of 1) .... a stick with small pieces of 2) .... tied to it at one end. The ngredients of their toothpaste were a 3) .... , rock salt, pepper, nd dried iris flowers. They put this dry 4) .... directly onto their teeth nd rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptian - The - Ancient - strong - loved - perfumes - .
   ....
2. did - Ancient Egyptians - What - the - make - use to - perfumes - ?
   ....
3. pepper - Their - in it - toothpaste - salt - had - and - .
   ....
4. was - most - Kapet - the - perfume - popular - .
   ....
5. perfumes - made - Cheaper - were - flowers - from - .
   ....
6. made - Ancient - The - Egyptians - candies - mint - .
   ....

5 Punctuate the following.

the Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(perfume - kapet - herbs - spices - minerals - mint)

....
....
....

WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary

الكلمات

salt dough	عجينة الملح	famous for	مشهور بـ
oven	فرن	restaurant	مطعم
temperature	درجة الحرارة	combinations of	مجموعات من - مزيج من
flavors	نكهات	different	مختلف
surface	سطح	secret	سر
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	delicious	لذيذ
mixture	خليط / مزيج	souks	أسواق

Look and Read.

انظر و اقرأ

Salt dough recipe وصفة عجينة الملح

Preparation time وقت التحضير

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

١٠ دقائق + ٣ ساعات للطهي

Ingredients المكونات

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

١ كوب دقيق عادي (حوالي ٢٥٠ جرام)

$\frac{1}{2}$ a cup of salt (about 125g)

$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب ملح (حوالي ١٢٥ جرام)

$\frac{1}{2}$ a cup of water (about 125ml)

$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب ماء (حوالي ١٢٥ مل)

Method الطريقة

1- Heat the oven on a low temperature.

١- سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة

2- Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more,

and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

٢- اخلط الدقيق والملح في وعاء كبير. أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أكثر بقليل، وحرك الخليط حتى يبدأ في تكوين كرة.

3- Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.

٣- ضع كرة العجين على سطح مستوٍ وشكلها بالشكل الذي تريده. يمكنك فرده وقطع الأشكال أو الأرقام أو الحروف، أو استخدام العجين لعمل أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد.

4- Put your finished items on a **baking tray** and bake in the oven for 3

hours until it is hard.

٤- ضع القطع منتهية الصنع على صينية خبز واخبزها في الفرن لمدة ٣ ساعات حتى تصبح صلبة.

5- Leave the items to cool, then paint them.

٥- اترك القطع لتبرد ثم لونها.



Help your child write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب التعليمات لعمل شيء ما ومقادير المكونات المطلوبة

Tip!

When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب تعليمات لخطوات عملية ، فإننا غالبًا نقوم بترقيمهم. يوضح هذا للقارئ أنه يتعين عليهم القيام بالخطوات بالترتيب من أجل إتمام العملية بشكل صحيح.

Read and write a recipe. اقرأ واكتب وصفة

Rose Soap

ingredients	quantities
soap base	400 grams
rose oil	30 drops
rosemary oil	20 drops
rose petals	40
oats	2 spoons

Use the table to write 5 - 6 instructions for making Rose Soap.

You can use these verbs:

(add - chop - melt - pour - press - put - stir)

....

....

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Egyptian flavors! النكهات المصرية!



Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a **secret** ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

تشتهر مصر بالتوابل التي تستخدم في الطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلاد. تعتبر التركيبات الخاصة من التوابل المختلفة مكونًا سريًا في العديد من الوصفات. ولكن ماذا يمكننا أن نصنع بالتوابل، إلى جانب الأطباق اللذيذة؟ يمكننا أيضًا استخدامها لصنع العطور والأدوية، وتلوين القماش. كما أنهم يصنعون هدايا تذكارية رائعة، وهي كذلك معبأة بشكل جميل للسياح الذين يزورون محلات التوابل والأسواق.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Egypt is famous for its .... that are used in cooking.
   a) people b) spices c) flower d) ingredients
2. The spices are used in .... cooking and restaurants.
   a) park b) school c) home d) playground
3. Special combinations of different spices are a .... in many recipes.
   a) known b) famous c) spicy d) secret
4. We can make delicious .... with spices.
   a) dishes b) perfume c) candles d) toothpaste

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the ....
   a) souks b) parks c) zoos d) schools
2. Tourists like to buy spices as ....
   a) cards b) souvenirs c) seminars d) dishes
3. People use spices to make perfume and ....
   a) cars b) books c) medicine d) wood
4. Spices are a secret .... in many recipes.
   a) soda b) ingredient c) flour d) price
5. In Egypt, there are a lot of ice cream ....
   a) favor b) flavors c) cover d) ovens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ball - square - oven - stir - bowl

To make salt dough recipe. Heat the 1) .... on a low temperature. Mix the flour and salt in a large 2) .... Add a little water, and 3) .... the mixture until it starts to form a 4) .... Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Egypt is famous for its .... that are used in home cooking.
   a) prices b) spices c) spaces d) pieces
2. Tourists buy fresh spices as ....
   a) souvenirs b) pioneers c) presents d) gifts
3. The underlined word "souvenirs" means ....
   a) presents b) books c) spices d) candles

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where are spices sold? ....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the flour - Mix - salt - and - in - bowl- a large - .

   ....

2. for - famous - Egypt - its - is - spices - .

   ....

3. delicious - with - We - spices - dishes - make - .

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

- egypt is famous for its spices

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Egyptian spices

(famous - cooking - ingredient - recipes - medicine)

Writing Corner

Cooking in Ancient Egypt

People in Ancient Egypt ate very well. Some families used spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.

Egyptian flavors

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs.

How to make chocolate chip cookies

Take 180 grams of flour and a little salt. Mix with 120 grams of butter and 150 grams of sugar. Add one egg and 12 drops of vanilla essence. Cut 150 grams of dark chocolate into a lot of small pieces - stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture. Put the chocolate pieces on top of the cookies. Then heat the oven on a low temperature and bake them.

Help your child write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية.

Review on Unit (6)

Vocabulary

wax	شمع	squeeze	يعصر	perfume oil	زيت عطري
shampoo	شامبو	hairbrush	فرشاة شعر	herb	عشب
dust	تراب / غبار	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	wick	فتيل
spices	توابل	toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	minerals	معادن
flavors	نكهات	cardamom	الهيل (الحبهان)	incense	بخور
stick	عود / عصا	crown	تاج	press	يضغط
cinnamon	القرفة	throne	عرش	caretakers	القائمون على الرعاية
scepter	صولجان	stir	يقلب	heat	يسخن

Language

- How many + اسم جمع	- How many candles do we need?
- How much + اسم لا يعد	- How much money do you need?
- a few + اسم معدود	- There are a few eggs.
- a little + اسم لا يعد	- There is a little sugar here.
- some + (إثبات /عرض / طلب) اسم جمع يعد أو لا يعد	- There is some rice.
- any + (نفي - سؤال) اسم جمع يعد أو لا يعد	- There aren't any tigers in Egypt.



Lesson (1)

فتيل	....	شمع	....
تسخين	....	زيت عطري	....
يقلب / يحرك	....	يعصر	....
قطرات	....	يضغط	....

Lesson (2)

مهرجانات	....	شعير	....
يحفظ	....	أعشاب	....
توابل	....	عسل	....

Lesson (3)

أميرة	....	مفقود	....
مندهش	....	قائم على رعاية	....
مائل / يميل	....	عرش	....
فارغ	....	تاج	....
قصر	....	صولجان	....
رسومات	....	تراب	....
القرفة	....	عطور	....
معجون	....	بخور	....
يستحم	....	تركيبات	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

خليط	....	عجينة	....
فرن	....	مكونات	....
درجة حرارة	....	وصفة (طبخ)	....
سر	....	نكهة	....
هدايا تذكارية	....	مزيج	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب .

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians made .... candies.
   a) apples b) bananas c) peaches d) mint
2. They made mint candies to keep their .... fresh all day.
   a) legs b) hands c) mouths d) heads
3. They mixed, cinnamon, melon, pine seeds and some nuts with ....
   a) water b) honey c) juice d) tea
4. They .... the mixture over a fire.
   a) stirred b) squeezed c) pressed d) heated

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He uses a plastic .... for his hair.
   a) soap b) spoon c) toothbrush d) hairbrush
2. We need some .... to make candles.
   a) perfume b) mint c) soap d) wax
3. Egypt is famous for its .... that are used in home cooking.
   a) spices b) cars c) books d) flowers
4. The king usually sits on his .... next to the queen.
   a) chair b) table c) throne d) desk

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

candles - perfume - need - squeeze - Egyptian

We need some wax for making the candles. Palm wax from 1) .... palm trees makes really nice candles. We need some 2) .... oil. We 3) .... in about 40 drops of this oil to make three candles. We can take flowers and press them on the tops of 4) .... We need one glass and one wick for each candle.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved .... perfumes.
   a) weak b) strong c) fragile d) simple
2. Cardamom and Cinnamon are ....
   a) books b) cars c) spices d) perfumes
3. The underlined word "loved" means ....
   a) hated b) disliked c) liked d) watched

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why was kapet expensive? ....
5. What were cheaper perfumes made from? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians - The - Ancient - strong - loved - perfumes - .
....
2. pens - many - How - you - do - have - ?
....
3. tigers - aren't - There - any - Egypt - in - .
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. How .... (many) oil do we need?
2. There aren't .... (some) books in the bag.

7 Punctuate the following.

- how many pens do we need ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Toothpaste in Ancient Egypt

(a stick - toothbrushes)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

need - rope - instructions - wick - candles

lariam : Hi, Toka. What are you doing?
oka : I'm making 1) ....
lariam : How can you make candles?
oka : Here are the 2) .... to help me.
lariam : What do you 3) .... to make candles?
oka : Wax, perfume oil and the 4) ....
lariam : What's the wick?
oka : It's the little cotton 5) .... inside the candle.

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

toothpaste - toothbrush - flowers - make - stick

lamza : What did the Ancient Egyptians use to clean their teeth?
hmed : They used a 1) ....
lamza : How did they 2) .... the toothbrush?
hmed : They used a 3) .... with small pieces of papyrus.
lamza : Did they use toothpaste?
hmed : Yes. They made 4) ....
lamza : What were the ingredients of their toothpaste?
hmed : Mint, rock salt, pepper and dried4) ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	wax	wick	sticks	heat	(....................)
2.	squeeze	pressed	stirred	melted	(....................)
3.	salt	add	oil	soap	(....................)
4.	oranges	honey	bananas	mangoes	(....................)
5.	eat	sat	understood	got out	(....................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	passed	died	found	melted	(....................)
2.	stir	press	heat	oil	(....................)
3.	eggs	mangoes	apples	traffic	(....................)
4.	juice	tea	tickets	milk	(....................)
	palace	scepter	lean	throne	(....................)

Review (2)

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Moral	
1. Think before you act.	Stop and think before you do something.
2. Living a simple and happy life is best.	You don't need lots of things to be happy.

Read and listen to Aesop's fable. Choose the moral a or b.

1. Think before you cat. 2. Living a simple and happy life is best.

Aesop's fable



Town Mouse went to visit his cousin in the countryside. Country Mouse lived a quit life in a small house. He enjoyed eating simple foods like beans, bread, and cheese. He was happy and welcomed his cousin warmly . Town Mouse did not like simple food, and wanted his cousin to come to the town to see his house. So, Country Mouse visited Town Mouse at his big house and ate amazing food in huge dining room. During the meal, there was a lot of noise from the cats in the house, and the two mice ran and hid. Country Mouse was very happy to return to his house in the countryside.

ذهب فأر المدينة لزيارة ابن عمه في الريف. عاش فأر الريف حياة هادئة في منزل صغير. كان يستمتع بتناول الأطعمة البسيطة مثل الفول والخبز والجبن. كان سعيدًا ورحب بابن عمه بحرارة. لم يكن فأر المدينة يحب الطعام البسيط، وأراد أن يأتي ابن عمه إلى المدينة لرؤية منزله. لذلك، فأر الريف زار فأر المدينة في منزله الكبير وتناول طعامًا رائعًا في غرفة الطعام الضخمة. أثناء تناول الوجبة، كان هناك الكثير من الضوضاء الصادرة عن القطط في المنزل، أسرع الفأران واختبئا. كان فأر الريف سعيدًا جدًا بالعودة إلى منزله في الريف.

Help your child read and learn.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities on Review (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Last ...., we went on a very special holiday.
   a) fall b) spring c) summer d) winter
2. We got into the .... by car.
   a) desert b) village c) town d) country
3. We rode .... across the sand dunes.
   a) camels b) donkeys c) cows d) horses
4. At night, we slept under the ....
   a) bed b) house c) stars d) sun

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " means modern or well developed.
   a) Old b) Ancient c) Advanced d) Colored
2. I wrote a/an .... to my cousin for my birthday party.
   a) invitation b) homework c) invention d) book
3. " .... " means very enjoyable and exciting.
   a) Magical b) Sails c) Skills d) Felucca
4. Egypt is famous for its .... that are used in home cooking.
   a) prices b) spices c) pieces d) cars

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

lived - quiet - welcomed - town - simple

Town Mouse went to visit his cousin in the countryside. Country Mouse 1) .... a quiet life in a small house. He enjoyed eating 2) .... foods like beans, bread, and cheese. He was happy and 3) .... his cousin warmly . Town Mouse did not like simple food, and wanted his cousin to come to the 4) .... to see his house.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last summer, we went on a very special holiday. We got into the desert by car. Then, we took a very different type of transportation. Can you guess what it was? We rode horses across the sand dunes! The views were beautiful. At night, we camped under the stars. It was an amazing adventure.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Last ………………… we went on a very special holiday.
   a) summer b) winter c) fall d) spring
2. We went into the ………………… by car.
   a) forest b) desert c) farm d) zoo
3. The opposite of the underlined word "beautiful" is ………………… .
   a) exciting b) interesting lovely d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did they ride across the sand dunes? …………………
5. Where did they camp? …………………

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. up - you - Can - blow - balloons - some - ?
2. in the - How - long - were - desert - they - ?
3. sits - king - The - throne - his - on - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Where did you ………………… (found) your books?
2. Can I have ………………… (any) apples?

7 Punctuate the following.

- ali and Omar were very happy in Cairo

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: A trip to the museum

(family - happy)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The community garden produces a lot of vegetables. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, so that's good for people's health. And they are a great place to meet people and make friends.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals, and other living things. At Mini forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests.

Lesson (3 / B)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant garden is usually beautiful in spring. Then one morning he hears a lovely blue bird singing in a tree outside.

2) Listen and circle the word you hear.

1- seed	2- thirsty	3- stalk
4- thanks	5- bath	6- bus
7- soft	8- selfish	9- through

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Donia is in Scotland with her family. Their apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view of the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends.

Activities on Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In one corner of the garden, it is still winter. The giant sees a little boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why the spring didn't come," he says, "because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hazem is at school. It's his first day. Asser will help him get to know the school. He'll take him around, show him where his classrooms are and stay with him at break. Hazem feels a bit nervous and shy. Asser gets him to meet some students. They are all very friendly.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The West Court is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The weather is sunny. The Hare lies in the grass. It feels hungry. The Hare likes to eat carrots. The Hare remembers the carrots that it keeps at home. The Hare runs back home to eat them.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent.

Activities on Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur whi. i is nice to touch. They are clean and calm .ni ials which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hana gets up every day at 6 o'clock. She has breakfast with her family at 6:30 in the morning. She goes to the library on Saturdays and plays sports on Sundays. She does homework on Tuesday.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. Amal is very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. They visited the Dome of Abu-Al-Hawa. They climbed up to the top.

Lessons (4&5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today is Ahmed's birthday. He is twelve year old. He is with his family in Cairo. They ar buying a present for him.

Activities on Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ahmed is in the carnival with his friends. A rides the rollercoaster. Adam watches shows i the theater. They are very happy.

Activities (1) on Review (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Dalia has a friend who lives in Zamalek. Dalia's friend is very helpful and funny. They went on a school trip to the Egyptian Museum and took many photos. That was a great day.

Activities (2) on Review (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife-like plants, animals, and other living things. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last week, I had my birthday party. My friends helped a lot. Hani decorated the cake. Fares hung up the streamers. Youssef made a playlist. Hani let off the fireworks. It was a great party.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ali is studying hard for his exams. They will start next week. He studies four hours a day. In his free time he goes outside and does some exercise. He goes running in the park. It's important to study hard and relax, too.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of families and friends. The children usually get presents, too.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our school's Mother's Day celebration is next Monday. We are organizing a special day for the event on Monday March 21^{st}. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school.

Activities on Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

It is Nesma's birthday. She is Youssef's sister. Youssef is hanging up the streamers. Dalia and Noha are Nesma's sisters. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it too.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Marco Polo was a famous explorer. He went to China in the 13^{th} century. He went on a long voyage by sea. Then, he went across the desert. He wrote a diary about his experiences.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

There was a surprising discovery in the village of Nok. They found clay sculptures of humans. They had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were in a sitting position. The quality of the work was incredible.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today was a long boring day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible. I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its center.

Lesson (4 &5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. The captain was very strong and had the skills to sail. The trip was amazing.

Activities on Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain, he says that tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited, soon I can explore the mysterious island.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Laila reads the instructions for making candles. She thinks she needs wax. She also needs some perfume oil. She heats the wax to melt it, then stir it well.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ancient Egyptians ate well. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey. People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

Lesson (3 / A)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious, but Peter likes to explore them. They are full of interesting and precious things, old paintings, statues, carpets, furniture.

Lesson (3 / B)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine.

Activities on Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.

Activities on Review (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last summer, we went on a very special holiday. We got into the desert by car then, we chose a very different type of transportation. We rode horses across the sand dunes. At night, we slept under the stars.



The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines and facts.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والحقائق.

- She always visits her aunt. (Habit)
- I get up early every day. (Routine)
- The sun rises in the east. (Fact)

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- I visit my cousins every week.

He / She / It / Singular noun + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (s /es / ies)

- He usually goes to school by bus.

Spelling rules:

1. We add (es) when the verb ends in (o / sh / ch / x / ss / z).

نضيف (es) إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (o / sh / ch / x / ss / z)

go	goes	wash	washes
watch	watches	buzz	buzzes
fix	fixes	cross	crosses

When the verb ends in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (ies).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies).

study → studies cry → cries fly → flies

When the verb ends in (a vowel + y), we only add (s).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبله حرف متحرك نضيف (s) فقط

play → plays say → says pay → pays

Help your child use the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط.

Negation النفي

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + don't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- We don't like fish.
- Girls don't play in the street.

He / She / It / Singular noun + doesn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

- She doesn't like history.
- Omar doesn't eat snacks.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Do + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

- Do you like English?
  - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.
- Do your parents get up early?
  - Yes, they do. - No, they don't.

Does + (he / she / it / singular noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

- Does Ali get up early?
  - Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.
- Does she work hard?
  - Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

Wh-question

QW + (do / does) + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

- Where do you live?
- I live in Cairo.
- When does he get up?
- He gets up at 6 o'clock.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

never	0%	أبدا	often	70%	غالبا
rarely	10%	نادرا	usually	80%	عادة
sometimes	50%	أحيانا	always	100%	دائما

never — rarely — sometimes — often — usually — always

0% ⟵——————————————⟶ 100%

- I never eat fish. I don't like it.
- He usually goes to school by bus.
- Mona always gets up early.

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي ولكن بعد الفعل (be) للتحدث عن كم مرة يحدث شيء.

- We always work hard.
- We are always happy when people offer to help us.

We use How often ....? to ask about the frequency of an action.

نستخدم (How often) بمعنى (كم مرة) للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء.

How often + do + I - we - you - they - اسم جمع + inf. ....?

How often + does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + inf. ....?

We use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something.

يمكننا أيضا استخدام هذه التعبيرات الزمنية للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء

once	مرة	twice	مرتان
three times	ثلاث مرات	four times	أربع مرات
every (day / week ...)	كل (يوم، أسبوع)		

- How often do you work in the community garden?
- I work there twice a week.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We always .... hard to identify ideal urban locations for our mini forests.
   a) work b) works c) working d) to work
2. I .... drink coffee for breakfast.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) haven't
3. How .... do you work in the community garden?
   a) far b) many c) much d) often
4. The weather is .... sunny in Egypt in summer.
   a) usually b) never c) rarely d) once
5. I .... eat dates as a snack. I love them!
   a) rarely b) often c) never d) don't
6. How often .... you play football with your friends?
   a) is b) does c) do d) are
7. Mr. Ahmed .... to work by car.
   a) usually goes b) goes usually
   c) goes often d) goes never
8. I .... go to work early. I never come late.
   a) never b) always c) sometimes d) twice
9. You .... call me now. Are you angry with me?
   a) rarely b) always c) sometimes d) often
10. He .... in bed before 10 pm.
    a) usually is b) often is c) never is d) is usually
11. We .... late for school.
    a) are never b) always are c) sometimes are d) often are
12. How often .... he go to the dentist?
    a) do b) does c) have d) are
13. She always .... flowers to her mom.
    a) give b) gives c) given d) giving
14. Where do Nadine's grandparents .... ?
    a) live b) lives c) lived d) living

15. How .... she get to her grandparents' home?

    a) is b) does c) do d) was

16. We don't like meat at all. We .... eat it.

    a) often b) always c) sometimes d) never

17. Dr Mohsen is .... late for work. He likes to be there on time.

    a) often b) never c) sometimes d) always

18. Omar .... plays tennis. He doesn't like it.

    a) rarely b) often c) sometimes d) usually

19. He goes to the club .... a week.

    a) once b) never c) every d) always

20. .... your uncle live in New York?

    a) Do b) Are c) Does d) Have

2 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They .... (doesn't) often play in the club.
2. How .... (ever) does he go to the cinema? - Once a week.
3. Sama never .... (wake) up late.
4. My aunt .... (live) with us.
5. They .... (always) eat snacks. They hate them.
6. He only goes to the club on Friday. He goes there .... (twice) a week.
7. The sun .... (rise) in the east.
8. Ali .... (always is) quiet in the class.
9. Omar .... (always) plays in the street. He plays in the club.
10. .... (Are) your grandparents live with you?
11. My sister doesn't like meat. She .... (always) eats it.
12. We .... (never) drink milk. We drinks it every morning.
13. The weather .... (usually is) sunny in Egypt in summer.
14. They .... (always) go cycling on holiday, but most days they relax on the beach.

15. My dad always .... (eat) a healthy breakfast.
16. It rarely .... (rain) in the Western Desert.
17. I don't usually .... (goes) into the city.
18. Where .... (does) Nadine's grandparents live?
19. My brother doesn't like fish at all. He .... (often) eats it.
20. Ali doesn't like sports. He .... (usually) plays football.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. garden - community - They - the - on - work - .
....
2. school - We - at - hard - work - always - .
....
3. plant - and - potatoes - usually - tomatoes - We - .
....
4. a month - once - They - cinema - the - to - go - .
....
5. don't - the shopping - We - go - mall - often - to - .
....
6. do - the dentist - How - to - go - you - often - ?
....
7. Sham El-Nessim - What - at - do - usually - you - do - ?
....
8. basketball - on - My - plays - sister - Saturdays - .
....
9. a garden - a balcony - Does - have - uncle - or - your - ?
....
10. bed - I'm - usually - in - 10 pm - before - .
....
11. play - How - do - you - often - tennis - ?
....
12. go - We - always - the park - to - .
....
13. goes - He - usually - school - to - bus - by - .
....

1) Relative Pronouns

ضمائر الوصل

- We use **relative pronouns** to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

تستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء معلومات أكثر حول شخص أو شيء أو مكان مفرد أو جمع



who

We can use "who" to talk about people.

تستخدم بمعنى "الذي / التي" للإشارة إلى الأشخاص "العاقل".

e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.



which

We can use "which" to talk about things.

تستخدم بمعنى "الذي / التي" للإشارة إلى الأشياء "غير العاقل".

e.g. These are the shoes which I wear to school.

3 where

We can use "where" to talk about places.

تستخدم بمعنى "حيث" للإشارة إلى الأماكن.

e.g. The laboratory is the place where we do experiments.

Remember

- When we join two sentences with who, which or where, we don't repeat the noun or pronoun in the second sentence.

عندما نربط جملتين باستخدام who ، which ، where لا نكرر الاسم أو الضمير في الجملة الثانية

e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher. Mr Afifi runs the football club.

Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

e.g. This is the place. Students study science there.

This is the place where students study science.

Help your child use relative pronouns and adjectives.

ساعد طفلك على استخدام ضمائر الوصل والصفات.

2) -ed and -ing adjectives

الصفات المنتهية بـ ed و ing

- We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ed- لوصف شعور الشخص.

e.g. I am excited!

e.g. She is interested in science.

- We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ing- لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء التي تسبب لنا المشاعر.

e.g. The football game is exciting.

e.g. This TV show is really interesting.

Adjectives

-ed				-ing			
interested	مهتم	bored	شاعر بالملل	interesting	شيق	exciting	مثير
excited	متحمس	tired	مُتعب	surprising	مدهش	tiring	مرهق / شاق
surprised	مندهش			boring	ممل		

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mr. Mohamed is the teacher .... is very kind.
   a) who b) which c) where d) what
2. These are the shoes .... I wear to school.
   a) who b) which c) when d) why
3. The laboratory is the place .... we do experiments.
   a) where b) when c) which d) who
4. Dalia is the girl .... sits next to me in the class.
   a) whose b) who c) which d) why
5. This is the place .... students have break.
   a) which b) when c) where d) who
6. I love the flowers .... grow in our garden.
   a) who b) where c) which d) what
7. The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.
   a) who b) where c) which d) when

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

8. This story is very ....

a) interests b) interested c) interesting d) interest

9. The test results are ....

a) surprise b) surprised c) surprising d) surprises

10. The football game is ....

a) bore b) bored c) interested d) boring

11. I didn't sleep well last night, so I feel ....

a) tire b) tired c) tiring d) exciting

12. Hani is a boy .... has a pet lizard.

a) which b) when c) where d) who

13. A pharmacy is a shop .... we buy medicine.

a) which b) where c) who d) what

14. Mrs. Sohair is the French teacher .... is always calm and helpful.

a) who b) which c) where d) when

15. This story is very ....

a) interest b) interested c) interesting d) interests

2 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Wandaland is a fantasy TV series .... (who) is popular with a lot of people.
2. This is the boy .... (which) broke the window.
3. This is the building .... (which) we do Physical Education.
4. An ostrich is a big bird .... (who) can't fly.
5. Bees are insects .... (where) make honey.
6. Ali is very .... (interesting) in math.
7. The children feel .... (boring) when there is nothing to do.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

8. I watched an .... (excited) football match.
9. I don't like this story. It's .... (bored).
10. I like meeting .... (interested) people.
11. This is the person .... (which) I admire most.
12. This is the homework .... (who) I did yesterday.
13. This is the hospital .... (which) I was born.
14. She is .... (interesting) in science.
15. This is the boy .... (which) broke the vase.
16. She was very .... (excite) when she visited her grandma.
17. Is this the car .... (where) you bought yesterday?
18. This story is .... (bored). I don't like it.
19. Mr Ahmed is the person .... (which) teaches me maths.
20. Is that the house .... (who) your uncle lives?

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1. is - red - the girl - Laila - has - who - hair - .

....

2. learn - The school - I - where - big - is - .

....

3. is kind - My Dad - the person - is - who - .

....

4. birthday - exciting - My - party - was - .

....

5. excited - what - I'm - to see - next - happens - .

....

6. film - boring - The - was - .

....

7. the place - is - This - do - where - experiments - we - .

....

8. really - was - I - last - tired - night - .

....

"If" Zero Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the zero conditional to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية لـ (If) للتحدث عن حقائق أو أشياء عادة ما تكون حقيقية.

Form التكوين

If / When + present simple , present simple or can + inf.

لاحظ أننا نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين إذا بدأنا بـ If / When

- If / When we book the tour today, it's cheaper.
- If / When you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

Present simple or can + inf. + if / when + present simple

لاحظ أننا لا نضع فاصلة إذا جاءت "if / when" بين الجملتين.

- The tablet switches off if / when you press this button.
- You can tell me if / when you need anything.

If / When + present simple , inf. .... باقي الجملة + (مصدر الفعل)

لاحظ أننا يمكن أن تبدأ جملة جواب الشرط بفعل أمر (مصدر الفعل).

- If / When you need anything, please tell me.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

(Do / Does / Can) + subject + inf. + if / when + present simple?

- Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?
- Can you help me if you have enough time?

Wh- question

QW + (do / does / can) + subject + inf. + if / when + present simple?

- How can we book the tour if / when we don't book it on the website?

Help your child learn "If" zero conditional.

ساعد طفلك على أن يتعلم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية "If".

2 Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

- We use prepositions of time at, on and in, to say when something happens. نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (at , on , in) لنتحدث عن وقت حدوث شيء ما.

1 at

We use "at" with times. نستخدم "at" مع الأوقات.

e.g. I go to bed at 9 o'clock.

With these phrases. مع هذه العبارات.

at night ليلًا	at lunchtime في وقت الغداء	at eight o'clock في الساعة الثامنة
at midday في منتصف النهار	at noon في وقت الظهيرة	at midnight في منتصف الليل

2 on

We use "on" before days of the week. نستخدم "on" قبل أيام الأسبوع.

e.g. I'll go to the club on Friday.

Before specific dates. قل التواريخ المحددة.

e.g. I'll travel to Cairo on September 28th.

With special days or occasions. مع أيام ومناسبات خاصة.

e.g. I'll get many presents on my birthday.

With these phrases. مع هذه العبارات.

on school days في أيام الدراسة	on the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
on time في الوقت المحدد	

3 in

We use "in" with seasons, months and years. نستخدم "in" مع فصول السنة والشهور والسنوات.

in August في شهر أغسطس	in summer في الصيف	in 2024 في عام ٢٠٢٤

e.g. In spring, I go to the parks.

With parts of the day. مع فترات اليوم.

in the morning في الصباح	in the afternoon في وقت الظهيرة
in the evening في المساء	

e.g. I have breakfast in the morning.

Help your child learn prepositions of time.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. The freezer .... work if you don't close the door properly.
   a) isn't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't
2. If I listen to music, it .... me study.
   a) helped b) helps c) had helped d) helping
3. If we go by bus, it .... quicker.
   a) would be b) is c) could be d) was
4. If you press the button, the laptop .... on.
   a) switched b) switches
   c) was switching d) would switch
5. If you heat ice, it ....
   a) melted b) melting c) would melt d) melts
6. If you find the book, please .... me.
   a) will call b) called c) call d) calling
7. If you don't water plants, they ....
   a) die b) died c) would die d) could die
8. When you .... two shoes, you get one free.
   a) buys b) bought c) buying d) buy
9. If you try to study for hours and hours, you .... concentrate.
   a) didn't b) can't c) couldn't d) wasn't
10. When you .... regular breaks, you remember more.
    a) had b) has c) were having d) have
11. We don't go to school .... Friday.
    a) at b) in c) up d) on

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

12. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.
    a) in b) on c) at d) up
13. I have breakfast .... 7:30 am.
    a) in b) on c) at d) with
14. They can meet .... lunchtime.
    a) on b) at c) with d) in
15. They went on a trip to Alexandria .... July.
    a) with b) on c) at d) in

2 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets

1. How can we get to Giza if we .... (missed) the bus?
2. .... (Did) your aunt always cook feteer when you visit her?
3. My English gets better if I .... (studied) the lessons again at home.
4. The computer .... (switch) on when you press the button.
5. Please .... (told) me if you need anything.
6. When you book online, you .... (could) also choose which seats you want.
7. Hana gets up .... (on) 8:00 am.
8. Youssef goes to the library .... (at) Sundays.
9. I have a party .... (in) my birthday.
10. I watch TV .... (on) midnight.
11. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... (on) July.
12. If you heat chocolate, it .... (melt).
13. If we go by bus, it .... (was) cheaper.
14. If I .... (has) free time, I run.
15. I was born .... (in) August 17th.

16. If we book the tour today, it .... (be) cheaper.
17. Plants .... (dies) if you don't water them.
18. If it .... (rain), we can use my umbrella.
19. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... (on) spring.
20. When do you get up .... (at) school days?

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. heat - melts - If - you - wax, - it - .
....
2. it - If - is - train, - faster - we - by - go - .
....
3. need - anything - me - if - you - Tell - .
....
4. press - switches off - If - the button, - the tablet - you - .
....
5. my - call - If - key, - you - find - me - .
....
6. sees - a bee, - When - my cat - tries to - it - catch - she - .
....
7. gets - Nader - at - o'clock - up - 7:00 - .
....
8. to - Red Sea - They - went - July - the - in - .
....
9. does - on - Hana - Tuesday - homework - her - .
....
10. Monday - We - class - a science - on - had - .
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to: نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر لـ :

1. talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking.
   التحدث عن الأفعال الجارية حول لحظة الكلام أو قريب منها.
   - They are building a new school this year.
   - She is studying for her exams this week.

2. talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.
   التحدث عن أفعال تحدث الآن وقت الكلام.
   - Look! The bird is flying in the sky.

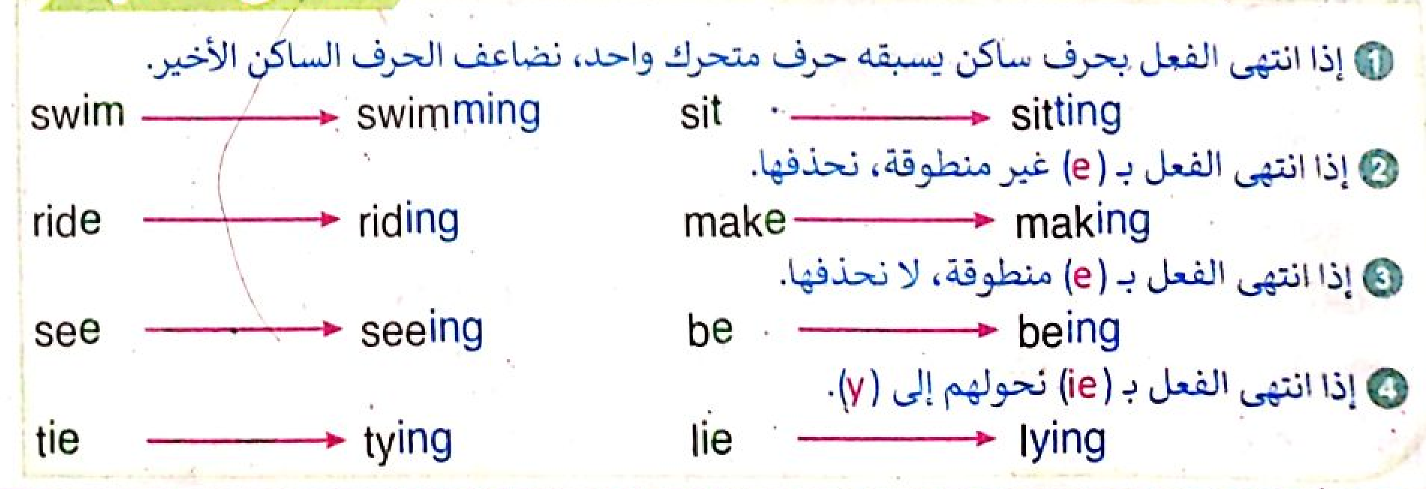
3. describe things that are happening in a picture.
   وصف أشياء تحدث في صورة.
   - Look at the picture. Ahmed is feeding the monkeys.

Form التكوين

I		am				
He - She - It - Singular noun	+	is	+	verb	+	ing
We - You - They - Plural noun		are				

- I'm studying hard at the moment.
- My dad is working in France.

Spelling rules



1. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

swim → swimming sit → sitting

2. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) غير منطوقة، نحذفها.

ride → riding make → making

3. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) منطوقة، لا نحذفها.

see → seeing be → being

4. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) نحولهم إلى (y).

tie → tying lie → lying

Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المضارع المستمر ويستخدمه.

Negation النفي

I		am					
He - She - It - Singular noun	+	is	+ not	+	verb	+	ing
We - You - They - Plural noun		are					

- They aren't enjoying their vacation.
- I'm not listening to music.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Am	I					
Is	+ he - she - it - singular noun	+	verb	+	ing	..?
Are	we - you - they - plural noun					

- Are you playing football today?
  - Yes, I am. - No, I'm not.
- Is Sara helping her mom?
  - Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

Wh-question

		am	I						
Q.W	+	is	+ he - she - it - singular noun	+	verb	+	ing	..?
		are	we - you - they - plural noun					

A: What are you doing, girls?

B: We're helping to make the birthday cake.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

today	اليوم	now	الآن	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Look!	انظر!	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	tonight	الليلة
Listen!	استمع!	Look out!	احترس!	still	لا يزال
this (morning - week - year)	هذا (الصباح - الأسبوع - العام)			Be careful!	كن حريصا!

Help your child identify and use the present continuous tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المضارع المستمر ويستخدمه.



Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hana .... for her exams at the moment.
   a) study b) studies
   c) are studying d) is studying
2. I'm .... for the football game.
   a) practice b) practices c) practiced d) practicing
3. We .... to make the birthday cake now.
   a) helping b) is helping c) are helping d) helped
4. Where .... your brother going?
   a) do b) does c) is d) are
5. They .... a party today.
   a) organize b) is organizing
   c) are organizing d) organized
6. I .... playing football now.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) am not
7. My dad .... TV at the moment.
   a) watch b) watches c) is watching d) watched
8. Where .... Basel and Amir playing today?
   a) is b) are c) have d) has
9. The students .... hard for a music concert at present.
   a) works b) work c) are working d) worked
10. What is Nesma ....?
    a) wear b) wears c) wore d) wearing
11. .... she reading a story?
    a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
12. I'm .... to school.
    a) cycle b) cycles c) cycled d) cycling

13. He is .... the cat.
    a) feed   b) fed   c) feeds   d) feeding
14. My mom is .... the cake.
    a) bake   b) bakes   c) baked   d) baking
15. They are .... up the streamers.
    a) hang   b) hanging   c) hangs   d) hanged

2 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets

1. My dad .... (are) working in France this week.
2. The students .... (study) hard for the exams now.
3. Are they .... (organize) a party?
4. Where .... (is) Basel and Amir playing?
5. She .... (not be) playing basketball.
6. .... (Be) she studying for her exams?
7. .... (Do) they helping in the kitchen?
8. They .... (don't) enjoying their vacation.
9. They are .... (play) tennis.
10. .... (Is) they blowing up balloons?
11. What are you .... (do)?
12. Noha and Dalida .... (play) with the balloons now.
13. Are they .... (run)?
14. What are they .... (eat) now?
15. What .... (are) he reading?
16. Where is your brother .... (study) in the USA?
17. What .... (be) you .... (do) today?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

18. I'm .... (practice) for the football game.

19. I .... (not play) the basketball match today.

20. Are Basel and Amir .... (watch) the movie?

21. Mona .... (are) cleaning her room.

22. Ahmed is .... (watch) TV.

23. The girls are .... (make) pizza.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. decorating - are - They - cake - the - .

....

2. enjoying - They - aren't - vacation - their - .

....

3. is - a party - wearing - Nesma - hat - .

....

4. you - are - What - doing - ?

....

5. sending - email - I'm - everyone - invitations - .

....

6. playing - Are - you - today - football - ?

....

7. not - home - I'm - going - now - .

....

8. game - for - I'm - the football - practicing - .

....

9. helping - We're - make - to - cake - birthday - the - .

....

Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

It's used to talk about finished actions in the past.

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية في الماضي.

e.g. I went to the park last Friday.

They played football yesterday.

Form التكوين

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، وله شكلان:

1. أفعال منتظمة (Regular verbs) وتتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) إلى الفعل.

like يحب → liked | play يلعب → played

walk يمشي → walked | study يذاكر → studied

2. أفعال غير منتظمة (Irregular verbs) وتحفظ كما هي.

is يكون → was | have يمتلك → had

swim يسبح → swam | do يفعل → did

see يرى → saw | go يذهب → went

Negation النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل).......

- We didn't have a vacation last year.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Did + subject فاعل + inf. (مصدر الفعل)....... ?

- Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

Wh-question

QW + did + subject فاعل + inf. (مصدر الفعل)....... ?

- Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

Help your child identify and use the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط ويستخدمه.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month,.....)	(الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي
ago	منذ	in + (تاريخ ماضي)	في عام .....

- We played tennis yesterday.
- He went to the zoo a week ago.

Verb to "be" in th past

Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was ....

- Mona was angry with her sister yesterday.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were ....

- They were happy at the party last week.

Negation النفي

I / He / She / It / Singular noun + was + not (wasn't) ..

- She wasn't happy there.

We / You / They / Plural noun + were + not (weren't) ..

- We weren't sad yesterday.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

(Was / Were) + subject فاعل + باقي الجملة?

- Was she happy in New York? - Yes, she was.
- Were they at the park yesterday? - No, they weren't.

Help your child identify and use the past simple tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط ويستخدمه.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Where .... Noura go last vacation?
   a) do b) does c) did d) doing
2. Did you .... your books?
   a) find b) found c) finds d) finding
3. We didn't .... a good meal in that restaurant.
   a) has b) have c) having d) had
4. How .... people get to China in the past?
   a) doing b) does c) did d) do
5. The journey to China .... years in the past.
   a) took b) take c) takes d) taking
6. The archaeologists .... many old tools.
   a) finds b) found c) has found d) finding
7. The water in the sea .... warm.
   a) weren't b) aren't c) wasn't d) haven't
8. The museum .... a lot of objects from ancient China.
   a) have b) are c) had d) having
9. How long .... you there?
   a) did b) was c) does d) were
10. Almost 100 years ago, there .... a very surprising discovery.
    a) was b) is c) were d) are
11. She .... to Luxor last year.
    a) went b) go c) going d) goes
12. Anas .... angry with his friend yesterday.
    a) is b) were c) are d) was

13. Nader and Mahmoud .... in my class last year.
   a) are   b) was   c) were   d) is

14. My family .... on a vacation last year.
   a) go   b) went   c) will go   d) goes

15. Taha and Ramy .... pizza for us last night.
   a) made   b) makes   c) making   d) make

2 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They .... (go) to the desert yesterday.
2. He didn't .... (went) on the tour with the guide.
3. Did your mom .... (made) your dress?
4. We didn't .... (had) a good meal in that restaurant.
5. The water in the sea .... (weren't) warm.
6. Where did you .... (found) your books?
7. She .... (go) to the library last week.
8. My friend .... (were) at the club yesterday.
9. Did they .... (made) a cake yesterday?
10. He .... (watch) television last night.
11. .... (Were) he happy yesterday?
12. Did you .... (had) a lot of homework?
13. .... (Was) they at school last week?
14. We didn't .... (has) a vacation last year.
15. How .... (were) your trip, Kareem?
16. Did the travelers .... (found) the treasure last years?
17. We .... (not make) tea last week.
18. He .... (don't) study math last night.
19. The math test .... (be) very easy yesterday.
20. When he was seven, he .... (have) a bike.



3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a lot - had - He - homework - of - .

....

2. made - They - a cake - night - last - .

....

3. happy - He - very - was - yesterday - .

....

4. to - last - She - the library - went - week - .

....

5. found - many - They - tools - old - .

....

6. in - They - were - class - year - my - last - .

....

7. a vacation - uncle - My - on - went - .

....

8. hair - had - The sculptures - unusual - and eyes - .

....

9. go - you - Where - did - summer - last - ?

....

10. happy - Were - you - the - at - party - ?

....

11. you - Where - find - books - did - your - ?

....

12. wasn't - The - warm - the sea - in - water - .

....

13. was - How - trip, - your - Omar - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد

Countable nouns الأسماء التي تعد

- **They are nouns that can be singular or plural.**

الأسماء التي تعد: هي التي لها صيغة مفرد وجمع، ويُسبق المفرد بـ a/an.

a boy → boys   an egg → eggs   a child → children

Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد

- **They are nouns that have no plural form.**

الأسماء التي لا تعد: هي التي ليس لها صيغة جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولا تُسبق بـ a/an.

- tea - sugar - oil - grass - time - money - bread - traffic - homework

How many / How much

1 How many كم عدد

How many + plural countable noun اسم جمع معدود ...?

- We use it to ask about quantities of countable things.

تُستخدم للسؤال عن مقدار الأشياء المعدودة.

(leaves - lemons - cars - people)

- How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

To reply, we use: للرد نستخدم:

1) a number (a / an / one / five / etc..). عدد

e.g. We need five lemons.

2) or approximate amount (some - a few - a lot of). مقدار تقريبي

e.g. We need a few lemons.

Help your child talk about quantities.

ساعد طفلك أن يتكلم عن الكميات.

2 How much كم للكمية

How much + uncountable noun اسم لا يعد ...?

- We use it to ask about quantities of uncountable things.

تُستخدم للسؤال عن مقدار الأشياء التي لا تعد.

(tea - sugar - oil - grass)

e.g. How much oil do we need?

- To reply we use only an approximate amount.

للإجابة نستخدم فقط كمية تقريبية.

(some / a little / a lot of)

e.g. We need a little oil.

Quantifiers محددات الكميات

a + singular noun (اسم مفرد)

نستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بصوت ساكن.

- a book - a car - a dog

an + singular noun (اسم مفرد)

نستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بصوت متحرك والحروف المتحركة هي (a - e - i - o - u).

- an apple - an ice cream - an egg
- an orange - an umbrella

some بعض

نستخدم "some" في الجملة المثبتة (مع الأسماء التي تعد أو لا تعد).

- I have some books.
- I have some rice.

تأتي "some" في سؤال العرض والطلب.

- Can I have some apples? (طلب)
- Would you like some tea? (عرض)

· Help your child talk about quantities.

any أي

نستخدم "any" في السؤال والنفي (مع الأسماء التي تعد أو لا تعد).

- Do you have any books?
- I don't have any books.
- Do you have any rice?
- I don't have any rice.

a few + plural noun (اسم جمع) قليل

نستخدم "a few" مع الأسماء التي تعد.

- They have a few bags.

a little + uncountable noun (اسم لا يعد) قليل

نستخدم "a little" مع الأسماء التي لا تعد.

- He drank a little milk.

a lot of + (اسم لا يعد or اسم جمع) الكثير من

نستخدم (a lot of) مع الأسماء الجمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- I have a lot of books.
- I have a lot of milk.

There is + singular noun (اسم مفرد) **/ uncountable noun** (اسم لا يعد) يوجد للمفرد

- There is a store in our street. (اثبات)
- There isn't any sugar. (نفي)
- Is there any rice in the bag? (سؤال)

There are + plural noun (اسم جمع) يوجد للجمع

- There are some girls from Luxor in my class. (اثبات)
- There aren't any tigers in Egypt. (نفي)
- Are there any lemons? (سؤال)

Help your child talk about quantities.

ساعد طفلك أن يتكلم عن الكميات.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. How .... students are there in your class?
   a) much b) many c) long d) often
2. Can I have .... sugar, please?
   a) a little b) a few c) a lot d) many
3. Hani has .... computer games.
   a) a little b) a lot of c) much d) a lot
4. How .... time do we have left?
   a) much b) many c) long d) often
5. We need .... carrots for the recipe.
   a) less b) much c) a few d) a little
6. I like .... milk in my tea.
   a) a few b) many c) a lot of d) too many
7. How .... lemons do we need for the lemonade?
   a) much b) many c) long d) often
8. How .... oil do we need?
   a) much b) many c) old d) often
9. There are .... girls from Luxor in my class.
   a) some b) an c) a d) any
10. There aren't .... tigers in Egypt.
    a) some b) any c) a d) an
11. Are there .... lemons?
    a) a b) an c) some d) any
12. There isn't .... bread here.
    a) some b) any c) a d) an
13. I don't have .... money for mom's present.
    a) a lot of b) a few c) many d) too many

14. How .... candles does 450 grams of wax make?
    a) often b) long c) much d) many
15. Do we have .... ice-cream?
    a) a b) much c) some d) any
16. She makes .... cookies.
    a) a little b) a few c) much d) too much
17. How .... brothers and sisters do you have?
    a) long b) many c) often d) much
18. We need .... books.
    a) a few b) a little c) much d) too much

2 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There isn't .... (some) sugar.
2. There is .... (any) wax.
3. I have .... (a few) money.
4. Mona has .... (a little) candles.
5. How .... (many) money do you need?
6. How .... (much) goats do we have?
7. There .... (is) a lot of cars here.
8. .... (Are) there any rice?
9. Are there .... (some) mangoes?
10. Can you buy .... (any) bread for me, please?
11. How .... (much) uncles do you have?
12. I like .... (a few) milk in my tea.
13. How .... (many) time do we have left?
14. Can I have .... (a few) sugar, please?

15. We need .... (a little) bananas for the recipe.
16. I have .... (any) bags.
17. There .... (are) a book.
18. There aren't .... (some) apples here.
19. There .... (is) a lot of candles.
20. I visited .... (any) countries last year.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. oil - much - How - need - we - do - ?

....

2. are - How - students - many - there - ?

....

3. a few - need - books - We - .

....

4. any - Is - left - there - rice - ?

....

5. any - aren't - Egypt - There - tigers - in - .

....

6. 400 - need - We - grams - chicken - of - .

....

7. a lot - don't - I - have - money - of - .

....

8. we - have - Do - ice-cream - any - ?

....

9. isn't - There - bread - any - for lunch - .

....

Unit (1) Green cities

Vocabulary

apartment block	عمارة سكنية	roof	سطح	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	organic	عضوي	volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حي سكني	mini forest	غابة صغيرة	Earth aid	مساعدة الأرض
organization	منظمة	wildlife	الحياة البرية	foreign	أجنبي
urban	حضري	High Line	خط سريع	railway	خط سكة حديد
local residents	السكان المحليون	hang out	يقضي وقتا مع	pass through	يمر من

Others

selfish	أناني	giant	عملاق	lovely	جميل
empty	فارغ	tiny	صغير جدًا	share	يشارك
silent	صامت	snow	جليد	Scotland	اسكتلندا
porridge	حساء الشعير	tradition	تقليد	the Meadows	المروج

Phonics

th /θ/				s /s/			
thick	سميك	through	خلال	sick	مريض	soft	ناعم
bath	حمام / بانيو	mouth	فم	pass	يمر / يعبر	selfish	أناني
throw	يلقي / يرمي	thin	رفيع	mouse	فأر	bus	أتوبيس
thirsty	عطشان	thanks	شكرًا	sing	يغني	seed	بذرة
threaten	يهدد	thing	شيء	six	ستة	sunset	غروب الشمس
path	ممر	thunder	رعد	so	لذلك		

Language

Present Simple Tense

- I play tennis.
- She goes to the club.

Adverbs of frequency

never - rarely - sometimes - often - usually - always - every (day) - once a day - twice a week - 3 times a year

- I always eat dates.
- The girl is never noisy.

Help your child revise unit (1).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nour asks Mariam to go to her .... tomorrow.
   a) park b) school c) garden d) house
2. Mariam goes to help her .... on Fridays.
   a) uncle b) father c) aunt d) brother
3. They work in a community garden on the .... of an apartment block.
   a) bottom b) hole c) roof d) ceiling
4. They grow .... and fruit for people in the local area.
   a) flour b) rice c) vegetables d) flowers

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dalida is my ....
   a) cousin b) mother c) sister d) friend
2. Dalida plays basketball on ....
   a) Tuesdays b) Mondays c) Sundays d) Saturdays
3. Dalida has a .... lesson on Saturdays.
   a) basketball b) English c) gymnastics d) Maths
4. Dalida also practices her gymnastics .... school.
   a) on b) before c) after d) at

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The Scottish people like to eat ....
   a) water b) tea c) porridge d) milk
2. You can use old coffee as natural .... for plants in your garden.
   a) snack b) meal c) energizer d) fertilizer

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. There's a .... line. I can see the trains.
   a) taxi   b) bus   c) railway   d) cycle
4. I prefer to eat fruit that is natural and organic with no ....
   a) chemicals   b) oil   c) vitamins   d) sugar
5. The Nile Delta has very fertile farming areas and the people .... rice there every year.
   a) harvest   b) take   c) pick   d) burn
6. The people who work in the community garden are all local ....
   a) vets   b) teachers   c) doctors   d) residents
7. I live in a / an .... block.
   a) garden   b) apartment   c) tent   d) houseboat
8. We usually .... vegetables and fruit.
   a) plant   b) stand   c) think   d) live
9. The selfish giant doesn't want to .... his garden.
   a) build   b) share   c) sing   d) come
10. I always .... with my friends in the park.
    a) hang out   b) pass through   c) pick up   d) look after
11. We use our .... to eat.
    a) mouse   b) nose   c) mouth   d) pass
12. John is ...., he doesn't want to share is toys.
    a) clever   b) good   c) nice   d) selfish
13. Farmers use .... to kill insects which eat crops.
    a) chemicals   b) perfume   c) fertilizers   d) milk
14. We .... many crops every year in our farm.
    a) meet   b) play   c) burn   d) raise
15. Many local .... in Aswan work in tourism.
    a) farmers   b) residents   c) teachers   d) vets



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. We .... see my aunt and uncle. They live in Australia now.
   a) rarely b) often c) always d) usually
2. We .... go to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holidays. We all love the sea.
   a) never b) usually c) don't d) aren't
3. I .... have a big breakfast before school. I get so hungry in class!
   a) never b) always c) often d) usually
4. My mom .... cooks fish, but most of the time we have meat.
   a) every b) doesn't c) always d) sometimes
5. You .... play video games with me. Don't you like them?
   a) aren't b) sometimes c) never d) doesn't
6. How .... does your teacher give you homework?
   a) often b) ever c) many d) much
7. We don't like fish at all. We .... eat it.
   a) often b) sometimes c) always d) never
8. Dr Mohsen is .... late for work. He likes to be on time.
   a) doesn't b) never c) usually d) aren't
9. My aunt lives with us, so I .... speak to her.
   a) often b) doesn't c) never d) rarely
10. I .... do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
    a) never b) sometimes c) always d) now

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

11. Hani .... plays football. He doesn't like sports.

a) rarely b) often c) always d) usually

12. We .... go to school on Fridays.

a) always b) sometimes c) never d) once

13. Ali and Hani .... their father in the field.

a) help b) helps c) helping d) is helping

14. I .... unhealthy food.

a) eats b) eat never c) never eats d) never eat

15. I go to the club .... a week on Friday and Sunday.

a) four times b) three times c) twice d) once

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wildlife - small - animals - green - nature

Mini forest is an organization. It plants 1) .... areas of trees in the middle of cities. These special 2) .... areas help people enjoy 3) .... and help our 4) .... like plants, animals, and other living things.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

friends - roof - idea - work - grow

Mariam and her friends work in a community garden. It's on the 1) .... of an apartment block. They 2) .... vegetables and fruit for people in the local area. The community garden is a good 3) .... because the plants help to clean the air. The community garden project is a good place to make new 4) ....



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy. But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The giant lives in a ....
   a) city b) town c) club d) village
2. There are tall .... in the garden.
   a) grass b) trees c) sticks d) leaves
3. The giant was ....
   a) clever b) happy c) selfish d) generous

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do the local children do on their way home? ....
5. Why is the giant selfish? ....

Read the text then answer the questions.

The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to be built. It was opened in 1961. It is 187 meters tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island. There is a restaurant at the top. **It** moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs. It is night, the colors on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The tower has .... stairs.
   a) 2,500 b) 5,200 c) 2,200 d) 5,500

Help your child deal with such questions.

2. The Cairo Tower is a/an .... building.

a) wonderful b) small c) ugly d) tiny

3. The Tower took .... years to be built.

a) six b) four c) five d) eight

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. How many windows are there on each floor? ....

5. What does the underlined word "It" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. 10 pm - usually - in bed - before - I'm - .

....

2. always - My dad - a big breakfast - in the morning - eats - .

....

3. never - Dina and Wael - late - are - for school - .

....

4. the dentist - you - go - How - do - often - to - ?

....

5. gives - Our teacher - sometimes - us - on weekends - homework - .

....

6. rains - the Western Desert - It - rarely - in - .

....

7. things - How - with - are - you - ?

....

8. sound - a lovely - The giant - hears - and - wakes up - .

....

9. apartment - the - center - Our - city - in - is - .

....

10. family - Samir's - building - a tall - in - lives - .

....

Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We don't like fish at all. We .... (always) eat it.
2. Data palm trees .... (never) produce fruit.
3. How .... (many) does your teacher give you homework?
4. We .... (often) go to Alexandria in the winter. It's too cold and I don't like cold weather.
5. Sara doesn't .... (drinks) milk for breakfast.
6. Ali never .... (eat) healthy food.
7. He .... (plays usually) football after school.
8. How often .... (do) Toka go to the garden?
9. They .... (doesn't) go to school on Friday.
10. How .... (much) does he do sports? - Twice a week.

7 Punctuate the following.

1- there is a big park near the River Nile ....

2- i am well and New York is great ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Life on a farm

Guiding elements:

(grow - fresh air)

Write an email :

Write an email to your friend Laila. Tell her about your new life in Scotland. Your name is Donia and your email address is donia@qwikmail.com. Your friend's email address is laila@egyptmail.com.

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

....

Unit (2) We are all different

Vocabulary

polite	مؤدب	poster	ملصق
nervous	متوتر	proud	فخور
shy	خجول	equipment	أدوات - معدات
calm - quiet	هادئ	laboratory	معمل
clever	ماهر	court	ساحة
scared	خائف	bench	مقعد
messy	فوضوي	fountain	نافورة
funny	مضحك	Gymnasium / gym	صالة الألعاب الرياضية
organized	منظم	five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية
kind / friendly	لطيف - ودود	well-being	سعادة

School Subjects

Physical Education	التربية البدنية	Information Technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات		
French	اللغة الفرنسية	math	الرياضيات	science	العلوم

Pronunciation

/æ/	/ʌ/
cat	cut
bag	bug

Language

Relative pronouns: (who - which - where)

1- Mr Ali is the teacher who is very kind. (Who for people)

2- This is the cat which drank the milk. (Which for things / animals)

3- The school where I learn is very big. (Where for places)

Adjectives with -ed / -ing:

- I'm excited.
- The football game is exciting.

Math

Estimating Numbers:

- 2.12 → 2.00
- 7.81 → 8.00

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I like .... very much.
   a) animals b) books c) food d) colors
2. I have a pet .... at home.
   a) cat b) lizard c) bird d) puppy
3. Puppies have soft .... which is nice to touch.
   a) tooth b) claw c) fur d) eye
4. Puppies have sharp ....
   a) fur b) eyes c) tail d) claws

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I go to a .... school.
   a) secondary b) primary c) kindergarten d) university
2. My best friend is .... , friendly and funny.
   a) unkind b) shy c) nervous d) kind
3. Mazen is .... and has short black hair.
   a) tall b) short c) thin d) fat
4. Mazen is .... and organized.
   a) polite b) impolite c) shy d) nervous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Sara is very .... She likes talking to people.
   a) messy b) friendly c) clever d) nervous
2. I don't like meeting people. I feel ....
   a) happy b) clever c) shy d) calm

3. Sara is very .... She shows respect to everyone.
   a) polite b) funny c) shy d) messy
4. John is .... at math. He can help me with my homework.
   a) bad b) sad c) good d) nice
5. Bees make ....
   a) sugar b) apples c) honey d) milk
6. We are .... of our school.
   a) proud b) happy c) messy d) carefully
7. I like playing .... football.
   a) five a side b) five-a-side c) five side d) five aside
8. We use the .... for basketball and gymnastics.
   a) laboratory b) pool c) hall d) gymnasium
9. We do experiments in the ....
   a) gymnasium b) laboratory c) court d) library
10. Children can grow plants in the ....
    a) garden b) classroom c) court d) music room
11. In the story, elephants are .... of mice.
    a) funny b) afraid c) clever d) sad
12. Cats have sharp .... and teeth.
    a) claws b) horns c) nails d) paws
13. I .... my friend's book when I forget my book.
    a) share b) eat c) sleep d) write
14. Cats are good .... your well-being.
    a) at b) in c) for d) on
15. Cats are my best ....
    a) birds b) pets c) plants d) fish



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. Mr Ali is the teacher .... is always calm and helpful.
   a) which b) where c) why d) who
2. This is the house .... my uncle lives.
   a) what b) where c) which d) who
3. These are the clothes .... you will take on holiday.
   a) where b) which c) who d) whose
4. Omar is the boy .... lives in our building.
   a) which b) where c) why d) who
5. Gymnasium is the building .... we use for basketball and gymnastics.
   a) what b) when c) who d) which
6. Sara is the girl .... has long black hair.
   a) who b) which c) when d) why
7. I am .... because we're going on holiday.
   a) excite b) excited c) exciting d) excites
8. This story is really .... I like it very much.
   a) interest b) interesting c) interested d) interests
9. I was .... to see my old friend at the club.
   a) surprised b) surprises c) surprising d) surprise
10. My dad was very .... after work.
    a) tired b) tiring c) tire d) tires
11. I don't like that film. It's ....
    a) bore b) boring c) interested d) bored
12. The football game is ....
    a) excited b) excite c) exciting d) bored
13. The library is the place .... we read books.
    a) when b) which c) who d) where

14. This is my grandfather .... I visit every Friday.

a) which b) who c) where d) when

15. My father was really .... last night.

a) tired b) tiring c) tire d) exciting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

eat - claws - fur - independent - scared

Cats are the best pets. They have soft 1) .... which is nice to touch. They are usually friendly. Cats like people but they're 2) .... Cats have sharp 3) .... and teeth, but they only use them when they are 4) .... Cats are good for your well-being.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

excited - return - popular - planet - series

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It is 1) .... with people of all age groups. It is interesting. It also takes place in the future on a 2) .... called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The 3) .... tells the story of a boy called Frey. Frey wants to 4) .... to Earth to look for his family.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Welcome to El Fouad School. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments. The West Court is a large open area where students have break. There is a playground and a playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a) a cinema b) a school c) Ahmed Zewail d) students

A) Choose the correct answer.

2. There are .... classrooms in the science building.

   a) two b) three c) four d) five

3. The opposite of the word "modern" is ....

   a) new b) up to date c) old d) thin

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where can students have break?

....

5. Who can the children grow plants with?

....

Read the text and answer the questions.

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but, how many children will I have? I don't know!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. After passing your .... , you can go to university.

   a) work b) sports c) exams d) homework

2. The underlined word "apartment" means ....

   a) park b) flat c) garden d) beach

3. The writer best subject is ....

   a) English b) Maths c) Arabic d) French

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the writer hope?

....

5. Which subject does the writer want to teach?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.



5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. clever - good - He's - and - at math - .

....

2. people - Sara - talking - likes - to - .

....

3. are - really - Wow! - You - organized - .

....

4. school - modern - We're - our - proud of - .

....

5. worry, - Don't - friendly - we - all - are - .

....

6. have - all - Do - your - you - books - ?

....

7. friend - My - kind, - is - funny - and - .

....

8. interested - is - in - She - science - .

....

9. is - has - Ziad - a boy - a pet - who - lizard - .

....

10. football - The - game - exciting - is - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Is that the house .... (who) your uncle live?
2. This is the classroom .... (which) we study science.
3. Mr Ali is the teacher .... (where) teaches us maths.
4. She is .... (interesting) in science.
5. The football game is .... (excited).

6. Hi Fareeda, I'm .... (surprising) to see you.
7. The results of the students' last test are .... (surprised).
8. Hani is my friend .... (which) has a pet lizard.
9. These are the class computers .... (who) we use for projects.
10. This TV series is really .... (interested).
11. This is the school .... (who) I learn.
12. The film was .... (bored).

7 Punctuate the following.

- omar is interested in science

....

- this is the street where Ali lives

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your best pet

Guiding elements:

(cats - claws)

....

....

....

....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your school

Guiding elements:

(laboratory - gymnasium)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (3) Vacation plans

Vocabulary

go quad biking	يركب الدراجات الرباعية	museum	متحف
Bab Zuwayla minaret	مئذنة باب زويلة	dome	قبة
ride on a rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهي	lake	بحيرة
explore the Souks	يستكشف الأسواق	stream	جدول مائي
the Manial Palace Museum	متحف قصر المنيل	puddle	بركة من المياه
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	destination	وجهة مقصودة
simulation theater	مسرح المحاكاة	carnival	كرنفال

Pronunciation

/v/		/w/	
volcano	بركان	water	ماء
vegetables	خضروات	wolf	ذئب
violin	آلة الكمان	window	نافذة
vase	مزهرية (زهرية)	whale	حوت

Language

If Conditional إذا (لو) الشرطية

Zero conditional (for facts) الحالة الصفرية (للتعبير عن حقائق)

If / When + present simple ⟶ present simple / can + inf.

- If you heat ice, it melts.
- If you press this button, the tablet switches off.
- When you book online, you can also choose which seats you want.
- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?.

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

- at midnight
- at eight o'clock
- at lunchtime
- on Friday
- on my birthday
- on August 17th
- in August
- in summer
- in 2023

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can go to the .... on Sunday.
   a) museum b) palace c) school d) park
2. On .... we can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum.
   a) Saturday b) Monday c) Sunday d) Friday
3. My .... can go with us.
   a) dad b) sister c) cousin d) mom
4. We can also go quad .... in the desert.
   a) riding b) sailing c) biking d) running

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali is in primary ....
   a) four b) five c) six d) three
2. Ali goes to .... every day.
   a) park b) desert c) school d) museum
3. Ali goes to school by ....
   a) bus b) bike c) car d) plane
4. Ali's favorite subject is ....
   a) English b) maths c) science d) Arabic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. I'm really excited .... our vocation.
   a) on b) in c) about d) with
2. You can go quad .... in the desert.
   a) fishing b) diving c) biking d) swimming

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla ....

a) tower b) pyramid c) minaret d) rock

4. We want to .... the Souks.

a) play b) explore c) stop d) swim

5. The lion lives in the ....

a) air b) forest c) sky d) river

6. Little Deer drinks water from the ....

a) river b) mountain c) tree d) wall

7. Let's .... on the rollercoaster.

a) fly b) swim c) ride d) dive

8. Fatima is afraid .... heights.

a) at b) on c) in d) of

9. She feels .... to live in such a fantastic place.

a) shy b) angry c) proud d) sad

10. He feels .... He came first in the exam.

a) sad b) angry c) bad d) happy

11. We watch shows in the ....

a) bank b) restaurant c) theatre d) bakery

12. The boys swim in the ....

a) mountain b) garden c) park d) lake

13. We can .... on the heights.

a) go b) run c) climb d) ride

14. My mother is wearing a ....

a) veil b) vase c) volcano d) violin

15. Ali is good at playing the ....

a) vest b) violin c) vet d) vegetables

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. If we go by bus, it .... cheaper.
   a) is b) was c) did d) would
2. How can we get to Giza if we .... the bus?
   a) missed b) miss c) missing d) had missed
3. If you heat ice, it ....
   a) melts b) melting c) melted d) would melt
4. Please .... me if you need anything.
   a) told b) would tell c) tell d) tells
5. If you don't water plants, they ....
   a) died b) die c) would die d) could die
6. If you .... the button, the tablet switches off.
   a) had pressed b) was pressing c) pressed d) press
7. If I listen to music, it .... me study.
   a) helped b) would help c) helps d) helping
8. Let's meet outside the school .... 10:30 am.
   a) on b) at c) in d) off
9. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... July.
   a) on b) in c) at d) up
10. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.
    a) in b) on c) at d) over
11. We had a science class .... Monday.
    a) at b) with c) on d) in
12. Let's meet .... lunchtime.
    a) at b) in c) on d) under
13. Hend was born .... 2009.
    a) in b) on c) at d) for

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

biking - relaxing - destination - Red sea - tourists

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt. It's by the 1) .... Many 2) .... like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do there. Tourists can go quad 3) .... in the desert. They like visiting ST Catherine's Monastery. They also like 4) .... on the beach.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

places - carnival - post - fantasy - rollercoaster

Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the 1) .... When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of 2) .... and fairy tales. There are amazing rides to try like the 3) .... and theaters where you can watch shows and concerts. There are 4) .... to eat and stores, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. We can climb up the hill to it - there's a great view from there!" Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret. She is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Amal is Fatima's ....
   a) sister b) brother c) mother d) cousin
2. It's Amal's first time in ....
   a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Luxor d) Tanta
3. The underlined word "excited" means ....
   a) sad b) unhappy c) pleased d) worried

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Amal want to see?

....

5. What did they decide to visit?

....

Read the text and answer the questions.

In the early morning today, two young men were fishing in a small boat when the weather suddenly changed. The sky turned grey and it became very windy. During the bad storm, the two men fell into the water. A man, Mr Hamdi, was walking by the sea at this time. He was very brave. He jumped into the sea and rescued the two men. Mr Hamdi has lived in the area for 30 years. He said that he hadn't seen such a bad storm since he was a little boy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Two young men were fishing in a ....
   a) big boat   b) small boat   c) big ship   d) small ship
2. Mr Hamdi has lived in that area for .... years.
   a) fifty   b) forty   c) thirty   d) twenty
3. The opposite of the underlined word "bad" is ....
   a) sad   b) good   c) unkind   d) unhappy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What happened during the bad storm?

....

5. What was Mr Hamdi doing during the bad storm?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. to - Fatima - Who - visit - comes - ?

....

2. in - The - lives - wolf - the forest - .

....

3. do - things - There - of - to - lots - are - .

....

4. eat - to - Fox - Little Deer - wants - .

....

5. to - I - the simulation - want - go to - theater - .

....

6. up - get - I - 7 - at - o'clock - .

....

7. places - I - visiting - new - love - .

....

8. birthday - my - Today - is - .

....

9. Souks - the - Let's - explore - .

....

10. with - My - go - can - mom - us - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Plants die if you .... (doesn't) water them.
2. If it .... (rain) , we can use my umbrella.
3. When my cat sees a bee, she .... (try) to catch it.
4. You can .... (tells) me if you need anything.
5. Does your aunt always .... (bakes) feteer when you visit her?
6. My birthday is .... (on) winter.
7. Sara works .... (at) the morning.
8. I often get up late .... (in) Fridays.
9. Grandma is always happy when we .... (visited) her.
10. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... (at) July.

11. If we eat too much, we .... (got) fat.

12. .... (Do) Ali study well if he takes regular breaks?

13. Let's meet outside .... (on) 5 pm.

14. I live .... (at) Egypt.

15. I visit my uncle .... (in) Friday.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. samer and Basel are excited about their vacation

....

2. dalia can go to the Souks on Monday

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the pyramids

Guiding elements:

(holiday - tourists)

....

....

....

....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your vacation

Guiding elements:

(excited - quad biking)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (4) Celebrate good times!

Preparing for the party

decorate the cake	يزين التورتة	blow up the balloons	ينفخ البالونات
hang up streamers	يعلق أشرطة الزينة	make a playlist	يعد قائمة أغاني
write the invitations	يكتب الدعوات	let off the fireworks	يطلق الألعاب النارية

Vocabulary

time	وقت	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	invitation	دعوة
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	few times	مرات قليلة	candles	شموع
details	تفاصيل	local community	المجتمع المحلي	end	نهاية
prices	الأسعار	documentary	فيلم وثائقي	revision	المراجعة
armchair	كرسي بذراعين	slow reader	قارئ بطيء	burn	يحترق
reply	رد	adults	أشخاص بالغين	breath	نَفَس
guests	ضيوف	blow out	يطفئ	present	هدية

Pronunciation

Long /ei/				Short /e/			
bake	يخبز	main	رئيسي	bread	خبز	sell	يبيع
pay	يدفع	shade	ظل	get	يحصل على	met	قابل
stay	يقيم / يبقى	sail	شراع / يبحر	ledge	حافة	pen	قلم جاف
wait	ينتظر	plate	طبق	said	قال	desk	مكتب
mate	زميل	say	يقول	wet	مبلل	pet	حيوان أليف
pain	ألم	gate	بوابة	men	رجال	shed	حظيرة / كوخ
cake	تورتة			bed	سرير	head	رأس

Language

Present Continuous Tense

- She's studying for her exams.
- They aren't enjoying their vacation.
- Are you playing football this year?
- Yes, I am.
- No, I'm not.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm writing to invite you to our school's .... celebration this year.
   a) birthday b) Mother's Day c) graduation day d) Father's Day
2. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday ....
   a) March 21st b) May 20th c) April 21st d) July 21st
3. We are inviting .... from the local community.
   a) boys b) girls c) children d) people
4. We hope you can ....
   a) help b) write c) attend d) play

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... everywhere like parties.
   a) Babies b) Children c) Teachers d) Doctors
2. These parties include, small .... , sandwiches and snacks.
   a) tables b) cakes c) pickles d) flour
3. Children like to blow out the .... on their birthday cakes.
   a) candles b) balloons c) books d) cars
4. In ...., the candles are left to burn.
   a) Nigeria b) Egypt c) India d) China

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. I'm hanging up the ....
   a) streamers b) invitations c) playlist d) fireworks
2. Ziad is sending the email ....
   a) playlist b) fireworks c) streamers d) invitations

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. My father is letting off the ....

a) decorations b) invitations c) fireworks d) playlist

4. Mazen is blowing up the ....

a) balloons b) playlist c) fireworks d) streamers

5. I am writing a/an .... to my cousin for my birthday party.

a) invitation b) cake c) balloons d) streamers

6. There were lots of .... at the celebration.

a) balloons b) books c) pens d) bottles

7. My sister decorated a/an .... with my mom.

a) balloon b) invitation c) cake d) streamer

8. Children like to blow .... the candles.

a) of b) out c) in d) at

9. My brother is twenty years old. He is a/an ....

a) baby b) old c) adult d) child

10. We give cake to all the .... at the party first.

a) guests b) babies c) birthdays d) countries

11. Dalida is going to .... a playlist on her phone.

a) do b) make c) write d) let

12. We need an adult to let .... the fireworks.

a) of b) on c) at d) off

13. Children usually get .... on their birthdays.

a) presents b) trains c) planes d) guests

14. I hope you can .... the party.

a) write b) attend c) sent d) get

15. Today is our school Mother's Day ....

a) location b) invitation c) information d) celebration



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. Jana is .... a story.
   a) reading b) read c) reads d) being read
2. Ahmed and Adam .... football now.
   a) play b) is playing c) plays d) are playing
3. .... Seif decorating the cake?
   a) Is b) Does c) Has d) Are
4. I .... on a project this week.
   a) is working b) am working c) work d) works
5. .... they making a playlist?
   a) Do b) Are c) Have d) Is
6. They .... blowing up the balloons.
   a) isn't b) aren't c) don't d) doesn't
7. Asmaa .... up the streamers at the moment.
   a) is hanging b) are hanging c) hang d) hangs
8. Mom .... making the cake.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) aren't
9. She is studying for her exams ....
   a) after b) yesterday c) this week d) last week
10. What are you .... , girls?
    a) do b) doing c) did d) does
11. They aren't enjoying their vacation ....
    a) last year b) at the moment c) usually d) never
12. The students .... hard for the music concert now.
    a) practices b) are practicing c) practicing d) practiced
13. What .... the girls playing in the club now?
    a) are b) is c) do d) have

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

presents - ago - birthday - family - candles

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make 1) .... cakes for our children. We put 2) .... on them to show their age. We often have parties with our 3) .... and friends the children usually get 4) ...., too.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

amazing - party - invitations - blow - decorated

Yesterday was my sister's birthday party. The 1) .... was amazing and my sister was very happy. My mother 2) .... the birthday cake. I sent the 3) .... My brother helped my father 4) .... up the balloons.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We are planning for a class party next week. It will be the last school week. Ali will hang up the streamers. Heba will blow up the balloons. Mona will decorate the cake. Hani will make a playlist. Omar will send the invitations. We'll invite the local people beside teachers, students and their family. It will be a nice day.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. .... will decorate the cake..
   a) Mona b) Heba c) Ali d) Hani
2. Hani will .... a playlist.
   a) choose b) make c) hang up d) blow up
3. The class party will be next ....
   a) day b) month c) year d) week

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are the children planning? ....
5. Who will hang up the streamers? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questions.

People around the world like to celebrate. In each season there are different celebrations. Every celebration has special traditions. In the winter, people in China celebrate the Lunar New Year. People in Japan will celebrate Children's Day. In the summer, people in Brazil celebrate carnival. In the fall, people in South Korea celebrate Chuseok. In celebrations, people put up decorations, serve delicious food, enjoy watching singers and dancers, give children gifts of money and give the poor some food.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. People in .... celebrate the Children's Day.
   a) Japan b) Brazil c) China d) Egypt
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) celebrations b) transportation c) sports d) health
3. In the .... people in China celebrate the Lunar New Year.
   a) fall b) winter c) summer d) spring

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When do people in Brazil celebrate carnival?

....

5. What do people around the world like to do?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. for - exams - She - studying - her - is - .

....

2. to - I - a boat - sail - want - .

....

3. is - streamers - Amira - up - the - hanging - .

....

4. to - you - I'm - invite - writing - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. is - Who - birthday - the - for - party - ?

....

6. the shed - I - are - tools - in - think - the - .

....

7. swimming - He - is - sea - in - the - .

....

8. they - playing - Are - a game - ?

....

9. isn't - cake - Ahmed - any - eating - .

....

10. wearing - Who - T-shirt - is - a blue - ?

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We are .... (buy) the decorations today.
2. .... (Be) they playing games?
3. I .... (be not) wearing a new hat.
4. My sisters are .... (cook) some food.
5. Is your dad .... (take) photos?
6. Where .... (be) your brother .... (study) in the USA?
7. What .... (be) you buying?
8. Are they .... (celebrate) at the park?
9. What are you .... (do) today, Malak?
10. They .... (not enjoy) their vacation at the moment.
11. Are you .... (read)?
12. Look! The cat is .... (run).

13. She .... (are) coming from school now.

14. Ali .... (is) watching TV, he is sleeping now.

15. .... (You) is doing his homework now.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. i'm studying hard for my exams

....

2. what are you doing today

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Birthday celebrations

Guiding elements:

(celebrate - present)

....

....

....

....

....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A celebration you went to

Guiding elements:

(last Friday - cake)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (5) Amazing journeys

Vocabulary

explorer	مستكشف	felucca	فلوكة
journey	رحلة طويلة	caravan	قافلة
voyage	رحلة بحرية	sway	يتأرجح
museum	متحف	wasteland	أرض جرداء
experiences	تجارب حياتية	sail	شراع
adventure	مغامرة	clay	طين / فخار
fascinated by	منبهر بـ	legend	أسطورة
dromedary	جمل ذو سنام واحد	tools	أدوات
discovery	اكتشاف	objects	أشياء
diary entry	يوميات	advanced	متقدم

Pronunciation

/dʒ/				/ʒ/	
language	لغة	damage	يدمر	usually	عادة
age	عمر	village	قرية	leisure	فراغ
joke	نكتة	arrange	يرتب	Asia	أسيا
cage	قفص	dangerous	خطير	television	تليفزيون
bridge	جسر / كوبرى	Japan	اليابان	pleasure	سعادة / سرور

Language

- Past simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- I played tennis yesterday.
- We didn't have a vacation last year.
- Did Dalia find her book? - Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Marco Polo was .... when he went into the Gobi Desert.
   a) 21 b) 20 c) 22 d) 40
2. Marco Polo was fascinated by the ....
   a) camels b) sand dunes c) desert d) plants
3. Some of the dunes were .... meters tall.
   a) 6 b) 16 c) 60 d) 66
4. The local people called the Gobi Desert "the .... ".
   a) died sea b) yellow sea c) cold sea d) dry sea

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In the ...., we had a delicious lunch on board of the felucca.
   a) morning b) night c) afternoon d) evening
2. There was a .... playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud.
   a) man b) baby c) woman d) girl
3. He played .... and the music was magical.
   a) badly b) quickly c) quietly d) beautifully
4. It was a .... experience.
   a) bad b) hard c) good d) kind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Marco Polo was a famous Italian ....
   a) explorer b) engineer c) doctor d) farmer
2. The .... people lived in Nigeria.
   a) French b) Polish c) Nok d) Egyptian

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن ...

3. .... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet.

a) Advanced b) Inspiration c) Clay d) Mystery

4. The .... dunes were like huge, yellow waves.

a) brick b) wall c) sand d) glass

5. A .... is a very old and famous story.

a) caravan b) legend c) wasteland d) direction

6. .... means modern or well developed.

a) Ancient b) Advanced c) Huge d) Big

7. Our village is quiet and .... I can sleep well.

a) peaceful b) noisy c) scary d) frightening

8. He was fascinated .... the sand dunes.

a) with b) at c) by d) on

9. I went on a .... on the River Nile.

a) ship b) felucca c) plane d) bus

10. .... mean camels that have one hump.

a) Wasteland b) Dromedaries c) Caravan d) Swaying

11. Today was a long boring day with .... weather.

a) fascinating b) interesting c) terrible d) good

12. I usually play games for ....

a) treasure b) measure c) leisure d) pleasure

13. Tourists like to .... camels.

a) fly b) sleep c) play d) ride

14. Marco Polo .... is on an island called Korcula.

a) Park b) Bank c) Museum d) School

15. Marco Polo used his .... to see the island.

a) telescope b) caravan c) crown d) phone

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. We didn't .... tea this morning.
   a) made b) make c) makes d) making
2. The travelers .... a treasure last year.
   a) found b) find c) finds d) finding
3. I .... angry with him yesterday.
   a) didn't b) hadn't c) wasn't d) weren't
4. .... you very happy in Cairo last year?
   a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Had
5. The scientists .... an amazing experience in 2000.
   a) had b) have c) has d) having
6. The man .... a camel yesterday.
   a) ride b) riding c) rode d) rides
7. The Nok people .... clay to make sculptures.
   a) use to b) used c) using d) uses
8. There .... an advanced culture from 500 B.C.E to 200 B.C.E.
   a) was b) were c) has d) did
9. The Nok people .... complicated hair styles in the past.
   a) have b) had c) has d) having
10. They didn't .... dinner.
    a) have b) has c) had d) having
11. Did they .... any tools?
    a) found b) finds c) find d) finding
12. .... there any planes in the past?
    a) Did b) Were c) Was d) Had
13. I .... to Aswan last year.
    a) traveled b) travel c) travels d) traveling



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wind - sand dunes - tall - run - dry

Marco Polo was twenty one, in 1275, when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the 1) .... , which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters 2) .... and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The 3) .... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the 4) .... sea" in their language.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

were - sculptures - humans - went - clay

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found 1) .... in this area, and archaeologists 2) .... to study them. The Nok culture was advanced, and they made sculptures from 3) .... , and tools from stone and iron. Their sculptures were usually of 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert in ....
   a) 1725 b) 1527 c) 1275 d) 1572
2. He was fascinated by the ....
   a) Nile b) hills c) sand dunes d) camels
3. The underlined word "fascinated" means he .... the sand dunes.
   a) hated b) bored c) liked d) disliked

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How old was Marco Polo when he went to the Gobi Desert?

....

5. What did the local people call the Gobi Desert?

....



Read the text and answer the questions.

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. They left Lop Nur .... Marco made sure they had enough food.
   a) after b) during c) before d) while
2. When the adventure ended, they were in ....
   a) America b) China c) France d) Egypt
3. The underlined word "exhausted" means very ....
   a) enjoyed b) bored c) relaxed d) tired

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What was the name of the oasis?

....

5. How were the animals?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. find - did - Where - you - books - your - ?

....

2. in - The camels - caravan - slowly - moved - the - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. Polo - was - Marco - explorer - a famous - .

....

4. had - amazing - I - experience - an - .

....

5. to - They - desert - 1275 - in - the - went - .

....

6. desert - How - were - long - they - in the - ?

....

7. the weather - What - was - there - like - ?

....

8. travelers - a treasure - Did - find - the - ?

....

9. homework - have - He - a lot of - didn't - .

....

10. angry - Fares - was - with - his - yesterday - brother - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Fares .... (be) angry with his brother yesterday.
2. Jana and Gameela .... (make) pizza for us last night.
3. She .... (go) to the library last week.
4. We didn't .... (had) a vacation this year.
5. Did Dalida .... (found) her book?
6. Where .... (do) you find your book last night?
7. How .... (be) your trip last year?
8. When I was six, I .... (be) short.
9. He .... (doesn't) write the homework last night.
10. I .... (visit) my grandma last Friday.

11. We .... (don't) go to school last Sunday.

12. Aya .... (is) sad because she lost her book.

13. .... (Do) you go to the park yesterday?

14. Ali went to the zoo, but he .... (don't) see the elephant.

15. Mona .... (find) her book under the table yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. how was your trip kareem

....

2. i think you re right.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Marco Polo

Guiding elements:

(famous - diary)

....

....

....

....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

An amazing experience

Guiding elements:

(felucca - sunshine)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأ...

Unit (6) Taking care

Vocabulary

wax	شمع	squeeze	يعصر	perfume oil	زيت عطري
shampoo	شامبو	hairbrush	فرشاة شعر	herb	عشب
dust	تراب / غبار	toothpaste	معجون أسنان	wick	فتيل
spices	توابل	toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	minerals	معادن
flavors	نكهات	cardamom	الهيل (الحبهان)	incense	بخور
stick	عود / عصا	crown	تاج	press	يضغط
cinnamon	القرفة	throne	عرش	caretakers	القائمون على الرعاية
scepter	صولجان	stir	يقلب	heat	يسخن

Language

- How many + اسم جمع — How many candles do we need?
- How much + اسم لا يعد — How much money do you need?
- a few + اسم معدود — There are a few eggs.
- a little + اسم لا يعد — There is a little sugar here.
- some + (إثبات / عرض / طلب) اسم جمع يعد أو لا يعد — There is some rice.
- any + (نفي - سؤال) اسم جمع يعد أو لا يعد — There aren't any tigers in Egypt.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt is famous for its ....
   a) colors b) books c) spices d) food
2. These spices are used in home ....
   a) cleaning b) cooking c) teaching d) sleeping
3. We can use spices to make .... and medicine.
   a) cake b) homes c) restaurants d) perfume
4. We also use spices to color ....
   a) shirts b) dresses c) ingredients d) cloth

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Peter lives in a big .... where his parents are the caretakers.
   a) home b) block c) apartment d) palace
2. The palace is .... and no one lives there now.
   a) new b) modern c) old d) small
3. Peter likes to explore the ....
   a) home b) rooms c) schools d) deserts
4. The rooms are full of interesting and .... things.
   a) precious b) cheap c) useless d) boring

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. We need some .... to make candles.
   a) wax b) tax c) fax d) max
2. .... the wax to melt it.
   a) Beat b) Hit c) Sit d) Heat

Help your child deal with such questions..

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع [illegible] الأسئلة

3. Put the ingredients for your soap in a ....

a) ball b) bowl c) car d) book

4. Egypt is famous .... its spices.

a) at b) by c) for d) with

5. Cheaper perfumes were made from ....

a) flowers b) gold c) wood d) cotton

6. Kapet was .... because it had a lot of ingredients.

a) simple b) cheap c) free d) expensive

7. The king lives in a big ....

a) place b) palace c) house d) tent

8. The king sits on his .... next to the queen.

a) thorn b) zone c) throne d) home

9. Parents are the .... of the house.

a) farmers b) bakers c) caretakers d) takers

10. To .... is to add something to food to make it last for longer.

a) look b) play c) preserve d) wash

11. A .... is a type of plant for cooking, with a strong taste or smell.

a) syrup b) herb c) grass d) cotton

12. .... is a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread.

a) Honey b) Barley c) Cotton d) Wood

13. I need .... to wash my hair.

a) perfume b) toothpaste c) salt d) shampoo

14. We use .... to wash our face.

a) toothpaste b) toothbrush c) soap d) perfume

15. We need some perfume ....

a) water b) milk c) oil d) gast



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. How .... pens do you have?
   a) long b) many c) much d) old
2. Can I have .... bread, please?
   a) a b) an c) some d) many
3. There isn't .... sugar left.
   a) any b) some c) a d) an
4. There are .... candles here.
   a) a little b) a few c) much d) less
5. How .... money do you need?
   a) many b) much c) long d) old
6. There .... a little sugar.
   a) is b) are c) were d) have
7. How much .... do you need?
   a) oil b) cars c) doors d) bags
8. How many .... do you have?
   a) sugar b) rice c) oil d) apples
9. There aren't .... tigers in Egypt.
   a) some b) a c) an d) any
10. I don't have .... money for mom's present.
    a) a few b) many c) a lot of d) too many
11. Do we have .... ice-cream?
    a) a b) a few c) some d) any
12. They have .... books.
    a) a little b) a few c) much d) too much
13. How many .... do we need?
    a) orange b) oranges c) apple d) banana

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Ancient - grew - clay - floods - garlic

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to a grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. In 1) .... Egypt, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile 2) .... They usually grew onions, 3) .... , lentils, and beans. Farmers also 4) .... wheat and barley. People used this to make bread.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ingredients - add - spoon - cooker - press

To make soap, we need oil, flower petals and soap crystals. First, put the 1) .... for your soap in a bowl. Heat the ingredients on a 2) .... Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden 3) .... and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and cool, 4) .... them into a soap container.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great <u>souvenirs</u>, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Egypt is famous for its .... that are used for cooking.
   a) prices b) cars c) buses d) spices
2. Fresh spices are one of the best .... for tourists.
   a) pioneers b) seminars c) souvenirs d) bars
3. The underlined word "souvenirs" means ....
   a) presents b) foods c) colors d) clothes

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are the secret ingredients in recipes? ....

5. Where are spices sold? ....



Read the text and answer the questions.

Ali is in primary six. He is twelve years old. He goes to school five times a week. All his teachers love him because he is polite and clever. His favorite subject is Math. He likes it very much. Mr Ahmed is his math teacher. Ali is a good model to follow. Ali is friendly and helpful. He always helps his friends. He goes to club every Fridays. His favorite sport is football. He is good at playing football.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ali is .... years old.
   a) 10 b) 11 c) 12 d) 9
2. Ali goes to school .... times a week.
   a) three b) two c) four d) five
3. The opposite of the underlined word "good" is ....
   a) kind b) polite c) bad d) pleased

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do all teachers love Ali?

....

5. What's Ali's favorite subject?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. a few - need - We - cars - .

....

2. any - Are - there - in - boys - your - class - ?

....

3. much - wax - How - we - do - need - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. Egyptians - ate - Ancient - well - .

....

5. brothers - How - have - you - do - many - ?

....

6. herbs - are - Rosemary - mint - and - .

....

7. is - Egypt - famous - spices - for - its - .

....

8. his - sits - The king - throne - on - .

....

9. some - is - There - milk - fridge - in the - .

....

10. a lot - We - have - candles - of - .

....

6 Read and write the correct from of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There are .... (a) girls from Luxor in my class.
2. Is there .... (some) tigers in Egypt?
3. Please hurry, we don't have .... (many) time.
4. Can I have .... (a few) sugar in my coffee, please?
5. There isn't .... (some) bread. Can you buy some?
6. How many .... (a pen) do you have?
7. How .... (many) cooking oil do I need?
8. How .... (much) candles does 450 grams of wax make?
9. There are .... (a little) lemons in the fridge.
10. How .... (much) students are in your class?
11. Aya didn't buy .... (some) dresses last year.

12. We have .... (many) oil. Don't buy any.
13. How .... (many) water should we drink a day?
14. My house has .... (a little) rooms.

7 Punctuate the following.

1. there aren t any tigers in egypt.

....

2. the Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Cooking in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(spices - fish)

....

....

....

....

....

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Egyptian flavors

Guiding elements:

(famous - medicine)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Exam (1)

محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة العجمي التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cats are the best ....
   a) fish   b) insects   c) pets   d) humans
2. They are beautiful with soft ....
   a) leg   b) fur   c) hand   d) ear
3. Cats have .... teeth.
   a) long   b) short   c) sharp   d) big
4. Cats are so ....
   a) cute   b) hard   c) wild   d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There is nothing in the bag, It's ....
   a) far   b) silent   c) empty   d) happy
2. I won a .... for my drawing.
   a) prize   b) test   c) hall   d) window
3. Nada is always .... All her teachers love her.
   a) ugly   b) nervous   c) polite   d) messy
4. There are many rides to try in the ....
   a) minaret   b) library   c) theme park   d) museum

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

camels - tourists - fine - photos - fish

We go on a trip to Cairo. Many 1) .... like to visit it. They enjoy the 2) .... weather. They can see the pyramids and ride 3) .... People there are kind. We take 4) .... We see the boats in the river. It's the longest river in the world.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

I'm Noha. I lived in Cairo. Last week, my family made a big party for my birthday. It was big and very nice. I was so happy because all my friends came. I loved the party so much. We danced and sang. I have good friends. They bought me many presents. I thanked them all. My mother made a big cake. My father bought a new computer for me. It was expensive. I will never forget this day when I was 13.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Noha and her family made a .... a week ago.
   a) hotel b) party c) city d) flower
2. Noha was happy because she had a new ....
   a) car b) computer c) ball d) bike
3. All her friends bought Noha many ....
   a) cakes b) baskets c) presents d) chairs

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who made a big cake for Noha? ....
5. How old was Noha? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. often - like - to - People - listen - music - to -
   ....
2. legend - you - hear - the - Did - ?
   ....
3. go - the - Let's - to - park - theme - .
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She .... (don't) speak English.
2. I .... (play) football now.

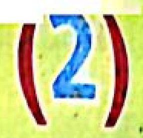
7 Punctuate the following.

- they won the match last week ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite subject

Guiding elements: (English - teachers)



نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Put the ingredients for your .... in a bowl.
   a) soup b) space c) soap d) spice
2. .... the ingredients on cooker.
   a) Hit b) Heat c) Hide d) Pour
3. Next, stir the ingredients with a .... spoon.
   a) metal b) plastic c) wooden d) paper
4. You can add flower .... to make the soap smell lovely.
   a) petals b) pedals c) beetles d) puddles

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Early spring is the best season to .... seeds in the ground.
   a) plant b) harvest c) drink d) paint
2. We do science experiments in ....
   a) libraries b) playgrounds c) laboratories d) courts
3. Fatima is afraid of heights, but she decides to face her ....
   a) trip b) fear c) view d) secret
4. .... is the air that comes out of your mouth.
   a) Sound b) Food c) Fire d) Breath

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shows - carnival - matches - rides - fantasy

Today is my birthday party and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the 1) .... ! It's an amazing place. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of 2) .... - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing 3) .... to try like the rollercoaster. There are theaters where you can watch 4) .... There are places to eat and stores, too.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

In front of the enormous Shibuya train station in Tokyo, there is a bronze statue of a dog. His name was Hachiko. His owner was professor at a university. Each day Hachiko followed his owner to Shibuya train station and waited for him until he came back. Sadly, the professor died at work before he could return home. Hachiko continued to wait at the station every day because the relation between him and his owner was very strong. He became a familiar sight to travelers at the station over time. Hachiko died at the same place he last saw his friend.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The main idea of this text is about a ....
   a) train station b) university professor
   c) dog trainer d) faithful dog
2. The underlined word "familiar" means very ....
   a) common b) unknown c) unusual d) strange
3. In front of Shibuya train station, there is a .... statue of a dog.
   a) silver b) bronze c) gold d) diamond

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did the professor work? ....
5. Why did Hachiko continue to wait at the station every day? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. studying - exams - my - I'm - hard - for - . ...
2. honey - Bees - insects - make - are - which - . ...
3. did - books - Where - your - find - you - ? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Dalia .... (have) a gymnastics lesson twice a week.
2. How .... (many) time do we have left?

7 Punctuate the following.

- dina does her homework on the weekend ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

An amazing trip

Guiding elements: - When you went there. - What the weather was like.

Exam (3)

محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة المنتزه أول التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Most people in Ancient Egypt ate meat usually at .
   a) parties b) fasts c) festivals d) weddings
2. They ate birds like ....
   a) ducks b) penguins c) parrots d) pelicans
3. They also get .... from cows and goats.
   a) burger b) cheese c) chips d) fries
4. We know about Ancient Egyptians from their ....
   a) websites b) magazines c) newspaper d) paintings

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. At the community gardens, people use natural ....
   a) chemicals b) medicines c) water d) fertilizers
2. Cats have soft .... which is nice to touch.
   a) hair b) fur c) eyes d) hands
3. A .... is very big.
   a) giant b) little c) small d) tiny
4. My cousin is old enough to .... off the fireworks.
   a) decorate b) send c) let d) make

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

scared - shy - independent - claws - fur

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft 1) .... which is nice to touch. They like people, but they are 2) ...., so they don't need to take them for a walk. They have sharp 3) .... and teeth, but they only use them when they are 4) .... I think they are the best pets.



4 Read the text then answer the questions

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible. A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, but it is still a mystery today.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Nok is a small .... in Nigeria.
   a) town b) city c) village d) country
2. Archaeologists are persons who study ....
   a) old things b) modern things c) geography d) maths
3. The sculptures were made of ....
   a) wood b) clay c) stone d) sand

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did the local people find the unusual objects? ....
5. How were the sculptures they found? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. she - does - her - visit - How often - grandparents - ?

....

2. wrote - his - Marco Polo - about - a diary - experience - .

....

3. is - a traditional - boat - A felucca - sailing - in Egypt - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. .... (Does) she helping her mother?
2. These are the computers .... (who) we use for projects.

7 Punctuate the following.

- how was your trip, Kareem ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements: (play - club)

Exam (4)

محافظة الفيوم
إدارة إبشواي التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ramy went to Cairo with his ....
   a) team   b) club   c) school   d) family
2. Their teacher told them .... stories.
   a) boring   b) interesting   c) short   d) bad
3. They arrived in Cairo in the .... morning at eight.
   a) late   b) good   c) last   d) early
4. They saw many .... things there.
   a) amazing   b) expensive   c) strong   d) gold

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There is nothing in the box. It's ....
   a) heavy   b) empty   c) colorful   d) long
2. My brother is very .... He is very good at math.
   a) worried   b) untidy   c) shy   d) clever
3. Cats are my favorite ....
   a) pets   b) beds   c) plants   d) vegetables
4. My father is .... the invitations.
   a) painting   b) cooking   c) sending   d) blowing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

grow - plants - roof - sometimes - tomorrow

Mona asks Heba to go to her house 1) .... morning, but Heba goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the 2) .... of an apartment block. They 3) .... vegetables for people in the local area, and 4) .... they sell them, too. Heba thinks the community garden is a good idea.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

I'm Sami. I'm from Fayoum. Last week, I went to Alexandria with my family. We went there by train. We slept in a hotel there. My best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea. We met my father's friend Mr Ali and his family. We played on the beach. In the afternoon, we went to Alexandria Library. In the evening, we had a nice meal in a restaurant. We had fish and rice. The food was good.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about a visit to ....
   a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Fayoum d) Aswan
2. They had a nice meal in a ....
   a) restaurant b) sea c) hotel d) beach
3. Sami .... swimming in the sea in Alexandria.
   a) doesn't b) hates c) doesn't go d) likes

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did they go in the afternoon? ....
5. What food did they have? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. in Cairo - lots - are - There - to see - . ...
2. is - of - made - A felucca - wood - . ...
3. your - taking - dad - Is - photos - ? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My brother .... (play) in the garden now.
2. How .... (much) books do you have?

7 Punctuate the following.

- What is maha doing ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite pet

Guiding elements:

(cats / fur - sharp claws)

Exam (5)

محافظة الجيزة
إدارة شمال التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Reem is in grade ....
   a) four   b) five   c) six   d) seven
2. Reem helps her uncle on ....
   a) Sundays   b) Fridays   c) Mondays   d) holidays
3. The community garden is a big green space on the ....
   a) roof   b) island   c) desert   d) sea
4. They sell the vegetables in the ....
   a) city   b) town   c) market   d) mall

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He wants to visit the Manial .... Museum.
   a) Palace   b) Castle   c) House   d) Home
2. The giant built a .... round the garden.
   a) well   b) will   c) wheel   d) wall
3. Does your garden .... a lot of vegetables?
   a) take   b) produce   c) clean   d) help
4. Don't study .... you're hungry.
   a) where   b) when   c) what   d) how

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

about - reader - interesting - jobs - read

I'm Shady. I'm 12 years old. I like reading in my free time. I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing an 1) .... book about 2) .... in ancient Egypt but it's taking ages because I'm a slow 3) ....! I am enjoying it. I love history books. My mom said she will get me a DVD about ancient Egypt. What 4) .... you? What are you reading?



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too. Children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath. Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. Some countries have different birthday food. In China people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthdays.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....
   a) children b) candles c) birthdays d) food
2. In China, people like to eat .... on their birthdays.
   a) sandwiches b) peaches c) cakes d) snacks
3. Children like to blow .... the candles on their birthday cakes.
   a) in b) on c) out d) at

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do we put candles on the birthday cakes? ....
5. What do children get on the birthday party? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. park - There's - near - a big - river - the - . ...
2. never - We - for our - use - chemicals - plants - . ...
3. Cairo - can - travel - We - to - . ...

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The supermarket is the place .... (who) we buy food.
2. Dalida .... (play) with the balloons at the moment.

7 Punctuate the following.

- what's the weather like in Alexandria ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite pet

Guiding elements: (Cats - soft fur)



Exam (6)

محافظة البحر الأحمر
إدارة الغردقة التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The apartment is in the ....

   a) club b) park c) city center d) sports center

2. The park is really ....

   a) ugly b) cool c) bad d) horrible

3. People go to the park for .... and meeting friends.

   a) studying b) cooking c) buying d) sports

4. There are a lot of trees and .... in the park.

   a) flowers b) fruit c) vegetables d) sugar

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We usually .... vegetables and fruit in our community garden.

   a) live b) grow c) go d) work

2. Farmers use natural .... for growing.

   a) view b) chemicals c) fertilizers d) salt

3. He is .... He isn't organized.

   a) mess b) messy c) miss d) clever

4. My dad is hanging up .... for the birthday party.

   a) food b) cake c) streamers d) spoons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

delicious - blow - fat - clothes - sandwiches

Children like parties. They often include small cakes, 1) .... and snacks. Children like to 2) .... out the candles on the birthday cake. Moms always make 3) .... food. Some families like to make different meals like noodles. There are a lot of friends and they give nice presents. Children usually wear beautiful 4) .... too. They like to sing and dance.

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Ali is a good boy. He studies hard for the exam. But he isn't worried because he is organized and clever. He spends a lot of time indoors and does some exercise outside. He also cycles on the weekends with his dad. He sometimes meets his friends at the weekend. He tries to relax and have fun. His friend Hany is organizing a party after the exam in his house. Ali likes that and he will go and enjoy himself. He has a camera to take photos with his friends.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ali is a .... boy.
   a) bad b) messy c) clever d) selfish
2. Ali does exercise ....
   a) indoors b) outside c) middle d) inside
3. He sometimes meets his .... at the weekend.
   a) cousins b) parents c) friends d) sister

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Ali do with his dad on the weekends? ....
5. Who is organizing a party? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. they - photos - Are - taking - ? ....
2. was - Ahmed - strong - very - yesterday - . ...
3. in - the - What's - weather - Cairo - like - ? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. .... (How much) candles does 450 grams of wax make?
2. We had a science class .... (in) Sunday.

7 Punctuate the following.

- I live in hurghada but I am from Cairo ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: A visit to a place you like

(favorite - family)

Exam (7)

محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة وسط التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amr and Nader visited the .... in Giza.
   a) park b) school c) market d) pyramids
2. Nader wanted to climb the .... in the desert.
   a) hills b) mountains c) trees d) stairs
3. Amr was afraid of ....
   a) dogs b) lions c) heights d) books
4. Nader was .... and helped his friends.
   a helpful b) lazy c) slow d) thin

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. People who work for no money are ....
   a) doctors b) nurses c) bloggers d) volunteers
2. My sister is .... Her books are on the floors.
   a) calm b) shy c) messy d) nervous
3. A .... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
   a) bus b) car c) train d) felucca
4. We let off .... on my birthday. It was amazing.
   a) fireworks b) toys c) streamers d) invitations

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

spoon - bowl - lovely - cooker - press

We need oil, flower petals and soap crystals to make soap. First, put the ingredients for your soap in a 1) .... Heat the ingredients on a 2) .... Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden 3) .... and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and cool, 4) .... them into a soap container.

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

My name is Aser. I'm in grade six. I love my school. My school has many new, modern buildings. There is The Ahmed Zewail Building. This is the place where we study science. There are four classrooms and two laboratories in that building. There is also the West <u>Court</u>. It's a large open area where students can spend time outside. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. We have a new gymnasium, we use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. I always enjoy my day at school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Aser's school is ....
   a) old b) small c) ancient d) modern
2. The underlined word "Court" means ....
   a) house b) park c) playground d) classroom
3. The Ahmed Zewail Building is where we study ....
   a) maths b) science c) art d) music

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How many laboratories are there in the school? ....
5. What do they use the gymnasium for? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - apartment - <u>Our</u> - on - sixth - the - floor - .
   ....
2. play - you - <u>How</u> - do - football - often - ?
   ....
3. tigers - in - <u>There</u> - any - Egypt - aren't - .
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If you .... (doesn't) water plants, they die.
2. She .... (cook) food for her family every day.

7 Punctuate the following.

- did you go on a felucca yesterday ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A place you would like to visit

Guiding elements:

-Who would you like to go with you? - Why do you like this place?

Exam (8)

محافظة البحيرة
إدارة رشيد التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Last .... , we went on a felucca on the River Nile.
   a) Friday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Monday
2. The felucca was made of ....
   a) glass b) wood c) stone d) iron
3. The felucca has .... white sails.
   a) five b) three c) four d) two
4. The .... has skills to make the felucca peaceful.
   a) teacher b) captain c) driver d) farmer

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We have perfume .... to make some candles.
   a) oil b) water c) sand d) gas
2. They need an adult to let off the .... in the sky.
   a) candles b) fireworks c) fans d) cakes
3. .... is something that people do not understand or can't explain.
   a) Inspiration b) Legend c) Sculpture d) Mystery
4. My room is .... I can't find my books.
   a) open b) messy c) clean d) tidy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

tools - art - families - culture - sculptures

A team of archaeologists went to the Nok to find out this area. They found many similar 1) .... in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming 2) .... The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced 3) .... from around 500 BCE to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful 4) ....

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Ali is writing to invite his uncle to his school's Mother's Day celebration this year. Ali's school is organizing a special day for this event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, they are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. He hopes his uncle can attend. Ali asks his uncle to read these details.

Date: Sunday March 21.

Time: 4:00 - 7:00 pm.

Location: School Hall

Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration or not.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about Ali's ....
   a) job b) invitation c) voyage d) journey
2. The underlined word "event" refers to ....
   a) school b) location c) Mother's Day d) hall
3. This party is going to be on ....
   a) Friday b) Monday c) Sunday d) Tuesday

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is Ali's school organizing? ....
5. How often does the local community help Ali's school? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. heights - Amal - afraid of - is - small - and - .

....

2. are - Cats - and - clean - calm - animals - .

....

3. the - How - giant - at the end - is - different - ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Samer .... (doesn't) plays video games. He doesn't like them.
2. We didn't .... (had) a vacation this year.

7 Punctuate the following.

- we live in Egypt and we love it ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Your last vacation

-When was it? - Where did you go and what did you do?

Exam (9) محافظة القليوبية إدارة طوخ التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. New York is very .... all the time.
   a) expensive b) quiet c) noisy d) calm
2. Alexandria is much quieter ....
   a) at night b) in summer c) in October d) on Friday
3. There are lots of .... restaurants in New York.
   a) cheap b) different c) big d) expensive
4. The food in New York doesn't .... like food at home.
   a) look b) smell c) taste d) feel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cats have soft .... which is nice to touch.
   a) claws b) teeth c) fur d) paws
2. .... are fully grown people, not children.
   a) Adults b) Kids c) Toddlers d) Candles
3. Tasneem is always ...., she never worries.
   a) calm b) shy c) kind d) clever
4. I want to .... the souks on Monday.
   a) expand b) explain c) explore d) experience

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

side - view - news - floor - apartment

I live with my family. We live in a big 1) .... It is on the third 2) .... There is a big park on the other 3) .... of the street. We have a great 4) .... from the balcony. We have spaces in our neighborhood. We usually go and play with our friends there.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister 's party. I use the scissors to cut the string. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. We need to hang up these balloons, too. My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are my friends. Now, they are decorating the birthday cake, we have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very excited.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about " my sister's .... ".
   a) school b) birthday c) friends d) balloons
2. My sister is .... years old.
   a) nine b) six c) ten d) fifteen
3. My .... sent the invitation.
   a) mom b) friends c) brother d) dad

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the writer doing? ....
5. Who decorated the birthday cake? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Leen - did - How - feel - on - birthday - her - ?
   ....
2. a very - is - He - boy - kind - honest - and - .
   ....
3. share - Let's - today, - book - my - Kareem - .
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Did your mom .... (had) a new dress?
2. They .... (doesn't) live near the river.

7 Punctuate the following.

- we work in the community garden ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

My school

Guiding elements: (big - playground - gym - garden)

Exam (10)

محافظة القليوبية
إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Samir and Ali went to see the pyramids in ....
   a) Giza b) Cairo c) Luxor d) Aswan
2. They went by ....
   a) bus b) taxi c) car d) train
3. Ali walked in the .... and he wanted to climb mountains.
   a) lake b) sea c) desert d) village
4. Samir was .... of heights.
   a) happy b) sad c) old d) afraid

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Farmers put natural .... on the soil to make plants grow well.
   a) fertilizers b) fruits c) sugar d) oil
2. Amr is the boy who is my best ....
   a) mother b) friend c) sister d) teacher
3. Let's go quad ....
   a) running b) swimming c) biking d) eating
4. I'm .... up the streamers for my birthday.
   a) blowing b) cutting c) reading d) hanging

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

football - cards - friends - candles - birthday

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually make 1) .... cakes for our children and put 2) .... on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and 3) .... The children usually get presents, too. People often give other people birthday 4) .... too, especially on important birthdays.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Yesterday, I had a wonderful time in Alexandria. I went there by train. My family traveled by train to Alexandria. My best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea early in the morning. My family liked to swim in the sea. We met my father's friend Mr.Mustafa' and his family. We played together on the beach. I built a huge sandcastle. The trip was amazing.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "there" refers to ....
   a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) London d) Aswan.
2. The family liked to swim in the ....
   a) river b) sea c) lake d) canal .
3. The trip was ....
   a) sad b) boring c) amazing d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How did they travel to Alexandria? ....
5. What is your best thing in Alexandria? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - neighbors - Our - and - friendly - helpful - .

   ....

2. her - Aya - fear - decides - face - to - .

   ....

3. an - explorer - Italian - Marco Polo - was - .

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The school is a place .... (who) we learn.
2. Look! The cat is .... (run) after the mouse.

7 Punctuate the following.

- does Sama have any cousins ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your visit to Sharm El-Sheikh

Guiding elements: (the sea - beach)

Exam (11)

محافظة الشرقية
إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... is my birthday.
   a) Friday b) Tomorrow c) Yesterday d) Today
2. I'm with my .... at the carnival.
   a) friends b) cousins c) family d) sisters
3. There are places to .... and stores, too.
   a) swim b) eat c) dance d) sing
4. There are amazing rides like the ....
   a) rollercoaster b) waterfalls c) carnival d) Orient Train

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Let's .... the Bab Zuwayla minaret.
   a) climb b) jump c) arrive d) plan
2. We can ask Ahmed to .... a playlist.
   a) send b) make c) hang d) blow
3. Cats have .... claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.
   a) soft b) dull c) sharp d) blunt
4. Mr. Adel is such a .... man. He always helps us.
   a) shy b) nervous c) messy d) helpful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

exciting - fantasy - theme park - theaters - rides

When you arrive at the theme park, you are suddenly in a 1) .... world- it's really 2) .... There's a lot to see and do here. There are amazing 3) .... to try like the rollercoaster, and 4) .... where you can watch shows.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Every winter, thousands of people from all over the world come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, they like to go to Khan El Kahlili to buy some souvenirs.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Most tourists usually visit Egypt in ....
   a) summer b) spring c) winter d) fall
2. Tourists like to visit .... in Upper Egypt.
   a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Luxor and Aswan d) Cairo
3. They visit the pyramids in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Tanta d) Zagazig

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do tourists come to Egypt? ....
5. What do tourists buy at Khan El Kahlili? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - else - do - What - we - ? ....
2. wearing - Everyone - helmets - is - . ...
3. the forest - Deer - Little - runs - through - . ...

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The park is a place .... (who) he flies his kite.
2. If we go by bus, it .... (be) quicker.

7 Punctuate the following.

- they don t like carnivals. ....



8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the zoo

Guiding elements:

(Last week - car - my family - lunch - animals - fun)

Exam (12)

محافظة الدقهلية
إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The guide will meet them in the hotel at ....
   a) 9 am   b) 9 pm   c) 10 am   d) 10 pm
2. They will be in a group of ....
   a) five   b) six   c) seven   d) eight
3. They will ride the quad bike for ....
   a) a day   b) a week   c) an hour   d) half an hour
4. They have to wear ....
   a) shoes   b) helmets   c) glasses   d) shorts

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are ....
   a) happy   b) soft   c) scared   d) independent
2. " .... " are people you invite to your home.
   a) Adults   b) Guests   c) Children   d) Chinese
3. We need .... to make candles.
   a) oil   b) wood   c) paper   d) wax
4. The children feel .... when there is nothing to do.
   a) bored   b) boring   c) excited   d) exciting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fear - surprised - hungry - face - brave

Gory was afraid of the darkness. She decided to 1) .... her own fear. She got a lantern and walked in the darkness. She was 2) .... when she saw the beautiful stars in the sky. Gory learned that it is important to be 3) .... When we face our own 4) .... ; we explore the beauty that waits for us on the other side.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explores in history. He lived during the 14th century. He was born in 1304. Ibn Battuta wanted to explore the world to visit the important Muslim cities and learn about different cultures. He started his journey at the age of 21, and it lasted for 29 years. He visited places like Egypt, India, China, and many more. He didn't travel by plane like we do today. He used camels, boats, and walked long distances. Ibn Battuta wrote about his journeys. His writings helped us understand and respect the differences between different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious to reach our dreams.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was ....
   a) 21 b) 29 c) 75 d) 14
2. In his journey, he used ....
   a) cars b) trains c) planes d) camels
3. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a) Ibn Battuta b) the journey c) the camel d) Egypt

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world? ....
5. What do we learn from Ibn Battuta's journeys? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to touch - The - nice - cat's - is - fur - . ...
2. a prize - the best - We - costume - have - for - . ...
3. explore - Should - the souks - Monday - we - on - ? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. His result .... (be) usually better if he studies well.
2. My family .... (go) on a vacation last year.

7 Punctuate the following.

- when my cat sees a bee, she tries to catch it ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: My sister's birthday

(decorate the cake - send invitations)

Exam (13)

محافظة أسوان
إدارة كوم امبو التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Basel is .... and helpful.
   a) shy b) messy c) kind d) nervous
2. He visited his grandparents in the ....
   a) winter b) summer c) fall d) spring
3. He went .... with his grandpa.
   a) fishing b) swimming c) running d) walking
4. He helped his grandma in the ....
   a) loving room b) bedroom c) bathroom d) kitchen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A lot of local .... in Aswan work in tourism.
   a) residents b) tourists c) farmers d) fishermen
2. My friend Magdy is good at math, he is ....
   a) messy b) bad c) clever d) ugly
3. You can open the ...., it's very hot.
   a) watch b) window c) wolf d) west
4. I'm .... up the streamers for my sister's birthday.
   a) blowing b) cutting c) hanging d) writing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

clean - walk - independent - fur - pet

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft 1) .... which is nice to touch. They are 2) .... and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are 3) .... We don't need to take them for a 4) .... every day.



4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Yesterday Ali didn't go to school because it was a holiday. He and his friend Marwan walked to the zoo. It was a sunny day. They arrived at seven in the morning. They saw many animals. They liked the giraffe but they didn't like the lions. They saw monkeys and gave them some bananas. Monkeys are funny animals. They had mango juice and ate sandwiches there. They left the zoo at three o'clock in the afternoon. They were very happy. They went back home by bus.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text about a visit to the ....
   a) museum b) pyramids c) zoo d) park
2. Ali and Marwan went to the zoo ....
   a) by bus b) by train c) on foot d) by car
3. They liked the ....
   a) giraffe b) dog c) lion d) tiger

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why didn't they go to school yesterday? ....
5. When did they leave the zoo? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. go - to - park - Let's - theme - the - . ...
2. can What - you - Sharm El-Sheikh - in - see - ? ....
3. make - going to - Mona - is - playlist - a - . ...

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He usually .... (go) to the school by bus.
2. We had a science class .... (at) Monday.

7 Punctuate the following.

- marco polo was a famous explorer. ....



8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: Your school

(big and clean - classrooms - playground)

Exam (14)

محافظة القليوبية
إدارة قها التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ahmed was .... on his first day at school.
   a) organized   b) shy   c) messy   d) friendly
2. Hassan was the .... who helped Ahmed.
   a) doctor   b) teacher   c) friend   d) nurse
3. Hassan was .... at science.
   a) clever   b) shy   c) nervous   d) polite
4. Ahmed .... his first day at school.
   a) helped   b) took   c) needed   d) enjoyed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Marco Polo was a famous ....
   a) trader   b) farmer   c) explorer   d) fisherman
2. Cats are my best ....
   a) pets   b) fruit   c) plants   d) vegetables
3. Organic food means we only use .... to grow fresh food.
   a) chemicals   b) roof   c) garden   d) natural fertilizers
4. Let's go quad .... in the desert in Giza.
   a) biking   b) playing   c) running   d) swimming

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wood - mixed - papyrus - seeds - mint

Ancient Egyptians used toothpaste and toothbrush to clean their teeth. The toothbrush was a stick with small pieces of 1) .... tied to it at one end. To keep their mouths fresh all day, they used 2) .... candies. To make these candies, they 3) .... cinnamon, melon, pine 4) .... and some nuts together with honey. Ancient Egyptians al... ...themselves and their bodies.

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Salma is inviting her mom to go to her school Mother's Day. At her school, they are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21st. Salma and her friend Reem are helping to get the place ready. Salma is hanging up the streamers and blowing up the balloons. She is sending invitations to all her friends and their moms to come to the celebration. Reem is making a playlist on her phone for this event.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....
   a) Salma's birthday b) Reem's birthday
   c) Mother's Day d) exams
2. The celebration is in ....
   a) March b) February c) June d) April
3. Salma is sending ....
   a) streamers b) balloons c) invitations d) phones

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
5. What is Reem doing to help in this event?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. blow out - to - candles - Children - like - the - .
2. grow - What - you - do - things - usually - ?
3. move - tunes - Send - step - with - each - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. This is the book .... (who) I read yesterday.
2. How .... (many) lemon oil do we need?

7 Punctuate the following.

- in india, candles are left to burn

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words: to your friend to tell him about "Your community garden"

Your name is Khalid, and your email address is (khalid@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Adham, and his email address is (adham@gmail.com)

Exam (15) الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the following dialog.

grow - community garden - to come - space - do - school

Abeer : Do you have any information about my uncle's 1) .... ?
Asmaa : No, I don't. What's that?
Abeer : It's a big green 2) .... on the roof of his apartment block.
Asmaa : What things do you 3) .... there?
Abeer : We 4) .... a lot of things, tomatoes, peppers and onions.
Asmaa : That's interesting. Ok, I'd like 5) ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct one.

1.	grapes	onions	bananas	mangoes	(............)
2.	here	hare	monkey	elephant	(............)
3.	lake	river	stream	desert	(............)
4.	oil	ticket	juice	milk	(............)
5.	track	truck	bus	car	(............)

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. The .... is at the top of a building.
   a) roof b) loaf c) floor
2. We .... do sports in the morning. We like that very much.
   a) never b) usually c) rarely
3. Zeinab is .... She shows respect to everyone.
   a) shy b) nervous c) polite
4. The tablet switches off if you .... this button.
   a) press b) can press c) will press
5. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.
   a) at b) in c) on
6. Mom .... the cake now.
   a) made b) is making c) makes
7. A .... is a type of earth that is sticky when it is wet.
   a) tool b) mystery c) clay
8. Hani didn't .... on the trip with the guide.
   a) go b) went c) goes
9. The king is sitting on the throne and wearing a .... on his head.
   a) crown b) scepter c) mace
10. Could you lend me .... money, please?
    a) many b) a few c) some

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Fatima's grandpa lives in a big city, on the 18th floor at an apartment block. Fatima used to be afraid of heights. She used to be afraid to look out of the windows, because they were up so high. But her grandpa would sit with her, and point out all the interesting things in the city. Now Fatima likes to look out of grandpa's windows. She can see the library, the train station and the park. She feels very grown up.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. What floor is the grandpa's apartment? ....
2. Why was Fatima afraid when she looked out of the windows? ....
3. What can Fatima see from the grandpa's windows? ....

B) Choose the correct answer.

4. Fatima's grandpa doesn't live in a .... city.
   a) big b) large c) small
5. The underlined word "interesting" means ....
   a) boring b) exciting c) dulling

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

1. subject - What - good at - is - she - ?
   ....
2. any - Salma - isn't - cake - eating - .
   ....
3. surprised - for - Are - the test - passing - you - ?
   ....
4. works - My brother - in - library - the - .
   ....
5. the dentist - you - do - How - go - often - to - ?
   ....

6 Write a paragraph of not less than (5) sentences on.

Tips for studying

You may use these words:

(get up - study - revise - healthy food)

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too.

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My sister, Dalida, plays basketball on Tuesdays. She has a gymnastics lesson on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics after school. She never misses a day!

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I like animals very much. I have a pet at home. It's a pet puppy. My dad bought it for me on my birthday. I think puppies are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and friendly. They have sharp claws.

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I go to a primary school. There are a lot of students in my school. My best friend is Mazen. He is kind, friendly and funny. He always helps me with my math homework. He always stays with me at break. We talk and play with each other. He is tall and has short black hair. He is polite and organized.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We go to the museum on Sunday. On Monday we can take photos at the Manial Palace Museum. My mom can go with us. She loves museums. We can also go quad biking in the desert.

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Ali. I'm in primary six. I go to school every day. I go to school by bus. I study many subjects, but science is my favorite subject.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Children everywhere like parties. These parties include small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.

Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board of the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical, and relaxing. It was a good experience.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. We can use spices to make perfume and medicine and to color cloth.

-) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things - old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

Exams

Exam (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Cats are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. Cats have sharp teeth. Cats are so cute.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl. Heat the ingredients on cooker. Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon. You can add flower petals to make the soap, smell lovely.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Most people in Ancient Egypt ate meat usually at festivals. They ate birds like ducks. They also get cheese from cows and goats. We know about Ancient Egyptians from their paintings.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ramy went to Cairo with his school. Their teacher told them interesting stories. They arrived in Cairo in the early morning at eight. They saw many amazing things there.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Reem is in grade six. Reem helps her uncle on Fridays. The community garden is a big green space on the roof. They sell the vegetables in the town.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The apartment is in the city center. The park is really cool. People go to the park for sports and meeting friends. There are a lot of trees and flowers in the park.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Amr and Nader visited the pyramids in Giza. Nader wanted to climb the mountains in the desert. Amr was afraid of heights. Nader was helpful and helped his friend.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last Friday , we went on a felucca on the River Nile. The felucca was made of wood. The felucca has two white sails. The captain has skills to make the felucca peaceful.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night. There are lots different restaurants in New York. The food in New York doesn't taste like food at home.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Samir and Ali went to see the pyramids in Giza. They went by taxi. Ali walked in the desert and he wanted to climb mountains. Samir was afraid of heights.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Today is my birthday. I'm with my family at the carnival. There are places to eat and stores, too. There are amazing rides like the rollercoaster.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The guide will meet them in the hotel at 9 am. They will be in a group of six. They will ride the quad bike for an hour. They have to wear helmets.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Basel is kind and helpful. He visited his grandparents in the summer. He went walking with his grandpa. He helped his grandma in the kitchen.

Exam (14)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ahmed was shy on his first day at school. Hassan was the friend who helped Ahmed. Hassan was clever at science. Ahmed enjoyed his first day at school.